

Gc
975.5
H618
no.2
1681107

M. L

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL
GENEALOGY COLLECTION

ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1833 02390 3567

Wynnels Hist.
Doc's.
2

HISTORY
OF THE
DIVIDING LINE

AND

Other Tracts.

FROM THE PAPERS OF
WILLIAM BYRD,
OF WESTOVER, IN VIRGINIA, ESQUIRE.

V. I.
VOL. I.

History of the Dividing Line.



Richmond, Va.:

1866.

F863
.406

1681107

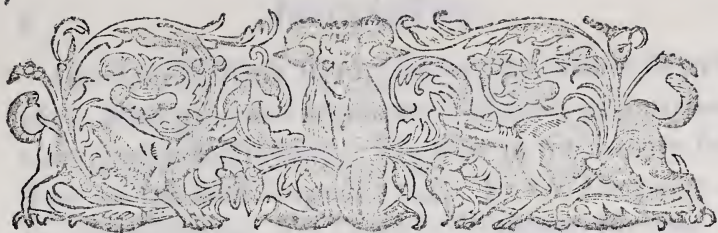
Historical Documents

FROM THE


Old Dominion.

No. II.

“Gather up the Fragments that remain.”



INTRODUCTION.

ILLIAM Byrd, the first of that Name who holds a conspicuous Place in the Annals of Virginia, was an active, intelligent and successful Man of Business, and exerted a considerable Influence in the Affairs of the Colony during the latter Part of the Seventeenth Century. On the 24th of December, 1687, he was appointed Receiver General of the royal Revenues, the Duties of which Office he continued to discharge until his Death, which occurred on the 4th of December, 1704; and among the Documents printed in this Volume is a Report from the President and several others of the Council concerning the final Settlement of his Accounts in that Capacity.¹

¹ See Vol. ii, P. 203, of this Reprint. In Maxwell's *Virginia Historical Register*, Vol. iii, Pp. 181-188, will be found further Information with

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016

“ being born to one of the amplest fortunes in this country,
he was sent early to England for his education,
where, under the care and direction of Sir Robert Southwell,
and ever favoured with his particular instructions,
he made a happy proficiency in polite and various learning.

By the means of the same noble friend,
he was introduced to the acquaintance of many of the first persons of the age
for knowledge, wit, virtue, birth, or high station,
and particularly contracted a most intimate and bosom friendship
with the learned and illustrious Charles Boyle, Earl of Orrery.
He was called to the bar in the Middle Temple,
studied for some time in the Low Countries,
visited the Court of France,
and was chosen Fellow of the Royal Society.

Thus eminently fitted for the service and ornament of his country,
he was made Receiver General of his majesty's revenues here,
was thrice appointed public agent to the court and ministry of England,
and, being thirty seven years a member,
at last became President, of the Council of this Colony.
To all this were added a great elegance of taste and life,
the well-bred gentleman and polite companion,
the splendid economist and prudent father of a family,
with the constant enemy of all exorbitant power,
and hearty friend to the liberties of his country.”¹

This Inscription is given with two verbal Variations
of little Consequence, in Campbell's *History of Virginia*, 2d Edit., P. 436, and with only one, the less
Material of the two, in the first Edition of that Work,
Pp. 113, 114. He seems to have been the immediate
Successor to his Father as Receiver General (see Vol. ii,
P. 202 of this Reprint); and therefore it would have
been more accurate to say, “ he was *made* Receiver Gen-
eral of *her* Majesty's Revenues here,” Queen Anne
being at that Time on the Throne; but it is possible he
continued such Receiver under *his* Majesty George the

¹ Westover Manuscripts, Edition of 1841, P. iv.

First, and likewise under *his* Majesty George the Second. From Records of the Council, still preserved, it appears that he became a Member of it and President.

This monumental Tribute is, indeed, a cordial Expression of the Merits of the Man; but, so far from being open to the Charge of Flattery, it falls short of the Panegyric employed by most of those who have written of Virginia Affairs during his Time. Rev. William Stith, a Contemporary, in the Preface to his unfinished historical Work, which abruptly breaks off at the Year 1624, thus speaks of the second William Byrd:

“I must confess myself most indebted, in this Part of my History, to a very full and fair Manuscript of the London [Virginia] Company’s Records, which was communicated to me by the late worthy President of our Council, the Honourable William Byrd, Esq. Neither could I excuse myself if I did not likewise acknowledge with what Humanity and Politeness that well-bred Gentleman and Scholar not only communicated those Manuscripts to me, but also threw open his Library (the best and most copious Collection of Books in our Part of America), and was himself ever studious and solicitous to search out and give me whatever might be useful to my Undertaking.”¹

¹ Stith’s *History of Virginia*, Page v of Preface, dated “Varina, Dec. 10, 1746.”

Of the Westover Library, founded by this Colonel Byrd, and augmented probably by *his* Son, the Third of the same “Name and Title,”

But the best Exposition of his Character, and the most enduring Monument to his Memory, will be found in his own Writings, which, so far as is now known, with the single Exception of a curious Paper concerning a Negro Boy, dappled with white Spots, contributed to the *Philosophical Transactions* in 1697,¹

some Account may be seen in Maxwell's *Virg. Hist. Reg.*, Vol. iv, Pp. 87-90.

Respecting the MSS. here mentioned by Stith, it has been commonly said of late that they were purchased in London by the Col. Byrd here spoken of, Son of the First, and Father of the Last that have now been noticed. It is stated in a Letter of Mr. Jefferson (*Works*, Edit. 1856, Vol. vii, P. 312), that they were bought at the Sale of the Earl of Southampton's Library, "by Doctor Byrd, of Westover." But the most trustworthy Account seems to be that given by Stith, in his Preface above quoted. "As these Records," says he, "are a very curious and valuable Piece of the Antiquities of our Country, I shall give the Reader an Account of them I received, many Years ago, in Conversation with Col. Byrd and Sir John Randolph. I had then no thoughts of writing the History of Virginia, and therefore took less Notice than I otherwise should have done. However, as I am perhaps the only Person now living anything acquainted with their History, it will not be improper to give it to the Reader, as I judge it highly worthy of his Knowledge." He then gives a Relation of the Manner in which they were made, and authenticated and subsequently preserved till the Death of an Earl (miscalled by him Duke) of Southampton, "which happened in the Year 1667," when, he says, "the late Col. Byrd's Father, being then in England, purchased them of his (Lord Southampton's) Executors for sixty Guineas." See further on this Subject an Article headed "Stith's History of Virginia," *Southern Literary Messenger*, September, 1863, Pp. 554-565.

¹ *New American Cyclopedia*, Vol. iv, P. 167; Allibone's *Dictionary of Authors*, Edition of 1859, Vol. i, P. 318.

are all comprised in the present Volume. Of these Writings, *The History of the Dividing Line, A Journey to the Land of Eden*, and *A Progress to the Mines*, were published in the Year 1841, in a Volume entitled *The Westover Manuscripts*, although they were not quite so fully presented therein as might have been desired. From the Preface to that Volume the following Passage is extracted :

“The Manuscripts of Col. William Byrd, of Westover, the Father of the last Proprietor of the same Name, of different Dates from 1728 to 1736, are contained in a large folio Volume, bound in Parchment, which has been carefully preserved in his Family, until recently placed in the Hands of the Editor. The Whole is in the Hand-writing of a Copyist, but written evidently under the immediate Direction of its Author, as there are numerous Corrections, Interlineations, and more considerable Additions, in his own Hand-writing. The Book was doubtless copied from the Author’s earliest Draught on loose Sheets, which were afterwards destroyed, as useless. At any Rate, this old Volume is the only Copy in Existence.¹ The

¹ This Statement seems incorrect as to Part of the Contents of the Volume. Ten Years after the Date of the Publication from the Preface, to which the above Passage is taken, Mr. Lyman C. Draper, in a Letter to Mr. Charles Campbell, giving an Account of the Westover Library, the Catalogue whereof, “a three Quire quarto Volume, Gilt-edged, and gilt red Morocco Binding,” was then, certainly, and probably is still, extant, says: “In the Catalogue I see no Mention of the MS. Journal of Running the Dividing Line between Virginia and North Carolina in

Historical Society of Virginia obtained the Consent of the Proprietor of the Manuscripts to have them copied, with a View to Publication. But the Operations of that Society ceased before the Publication had been commenced, and when only one of the several Manuscripts had been copied.¹ It was one of the latest Acts of the last Proprietor, George E. Harrison, Esq., of Brandon, to place at our Disposal this highly

1728—Copies of which I have heretofore informed you, are in the Library of the American Philosophical Society; one, judging from the Title, the same as that published among the 'Westover Manuscripts' at Petersburg, in 1841; the other, the 'Secret History of the Dividing Line.' Neither of these have I yet found the right Time to call and examine, and the only Knowledge that I have of them is from the Catalogue of the Society which possesses them."—Maxwell's *Virg. Hist. Reg.*, Vol. iv, P. 88. Without further Information on the Subject, it is impossible even to form a reasonable Conjecture whether these two Papers are "Copies" of one and the same Original, differing in nothing but the Title, or of substantially different Compositions; or whether indeed they are Copies at all, and not the very Originals, which, instead of being written on loose Sheets and destroyed, as the Editor supposes, may have been given by the Widow of the last Colonel Byrd, who was a Philadelphia Lady, to the Society named, which had its Seat in that City. The Statement quoted in the Text had Reference, doubtless, only to Colonel Byrd's own Writings; else it would have been inaccurate as to yet another Part of the Contents of "this old Volume," as will presently be seen.

¹ This relates to the first Association, known as the Virginia Historical Society. Several Years afterwards another, under the same Name, or the same under another Organization, sprang into active Existence, and continued to flourish until the breaking out of the late Civil War. Its "Operations" were then suspended; but we may hope that the Society did not itself become extinct.

valued Work of this distinguished and talented Ancestor, with Permission to publish any Portion, or the Whole of the Contents, provided the manuscript Volume itself should be preserved uninjured, and afterwards restored to the Owner. The better to secure the latter Object, the Copy of the Part made for the Use of the Historical Society, has also been placed in our Hands by the Directors."

To this substantially correct Account of the Parchment-bound Folio, (the Contents of which, however, are not fully, nor as to their Dates quite accurately noticed in it) we subjoin a Statement made at our request by the estimable and accomplished Widow of Mr. Harrison. These are her written Words:

"This Manuscript was the Production of the second Colonel Byrd, of Westover, who for his rare Wit, Learning and Wisdom was styled the 'Black Swan' of the Family. It descended to his Son, the last Colonel William Byrd, who married Miss Mary Willing, of Philadelphia. She presented this Book to George Evelyn Harrison, the Son of her Daughter, Evelyn Byrd, who had married Mr. Benjamin Harrison, of Brandon."

As already intimated, the Volume contains Articles not hitherto Printed, partly composed, partly collected only, by Col. Byrd; and all its Contents were transcribed by his Copyist without Regard to chronological Order, Connection of Subjects, or Method of any

Kind. Nevertheless, his accidental and chaotic Arrangement, or rather Want of all Arrangement, has been scrupulously followed in this Reprint; the Aim of which has been to give, as far as it was practicable with Types, *fac-simile* Copies of his Transcript; and with this View numerous Expressions are here “faithfully presented,” which, probably because they were thought too free, were either altered or entirely suppressed in the partial Publication of 1841. It may be that the Editor of that Volume, following the Copy made for the Historical Society, was led unknowingly into these Alterations and Omissions, which possibly had been therein introduced, or they may have been the Result of his own Taste and Judgment. Whatever the Fact, this Reprint has reverted to the original Manuscript, and the Whole is here given with perfect Fidelity.

A few Words descriptive of the “Parchment-bound Folio” itself will conclude this Introduction.

The Cover, which is of white Vellum, measures fourteen and a half Inches in Length, ten and a quarter Inches in Breadth, and a quarter of an Inch in Thickness.

The Leaves are fourteen Inches Long, and nine and three quarter Inches wide.

The Volume is lettered on the Back, the Lettering beginning at one Inch from the Top, thus —

History of the
Line and Other
Tracts.

On the Inside of the Cover is a Copy of the Book-plate, which is to be found in all the Books which belonged to Col. Byrd; containing his Arms (including several Quarterings), his Name "*William Byrd of Westover in Virginia Esqr.*," and the Motto,

"NULLA PALLESCERE CULPA."

Two blank fly Leaves, plain, with Water Mark "T. Gilpin & Co Brandywine," and one Leaf, with Water Mark like the Rest of the Book, *i. e.*, Shield with fleur-de-lis and the Monogram *WR*, are between the Cover and the Commencement of the Manuscript. On the Top of the first Page of this latter Leaf, one Inch from the Top, is written,

"To M^{rs} Evelyn Taylor Harrison

from her affectionate

Mother Mary Byrd"

and below this,

"For

Master George Evelyn Harrison

of Brandon

Westover May 12th 1809."

On the opposite Side of this Leaf, which is discoloured and badly torn, all that can be read is,

Contents.

male Creed.

History of the line

&c. &c. &c.

There are 366 written Pages, including Contents and presentation Page, 8 blank Leaves between the Proceedings of the Commissioners appointed to lay out the Bounds of the Northern Neck and the Essay on Bulk Tobacco, 51 blank Leaves at the End of the MS., and then two fly Leaves exactly similar to those in the first Part. Every Page is ruled in red Lines, enclosing the written Context, an Inch and a half from the outer and three quarters of an Inch from the inner Edge. Of written Leaves, there are 181, blank Leaves 59, Contents 1, fly Leaves 4; Total 246. To the Courtesy of Mrs. Harrison, of Upper Brandon, the Widow of the late George E. Harrison, Esq., mentioned in the Extract from the Preface to the Volume published in 1841, we are indebted for the Opportunity to spread the Pages of this interesting and valuable Contribution to the colonial History of our State before the Students of American Civilization.

T. H. W.

Richmond, Va., Nov., 1866.

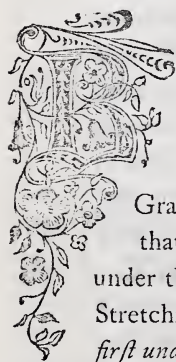


HISTORY¹

OF THE

DIVIDING LINE:

Run in the Year 1728.



BEFORE I enter upon the Journal of the Line between Virginia and North Carolina, it will be necessary to clear the way to it, by shewing how the other British Colonies on the Main have, one after another, been carved out of Virginia, by Grants from his Majesty's Royal Predecessors. All that part of the Northern American Continent now under the Dominion of the King of Great Britain, and Stretching quite as far as the Cape of Florida, went *at first under the General Name of Virginia.*

The only Distinction, in those early Days, was, that all the Coast to the Southward of Chesapeake Bay was called South Virginia, and all to the Northward of it, North Virginia.

The first Settlement of this fine Country was owing to that great Ornament of the British Nation, Sir Walter Raleigh, who obtained a Grant thereof from Queen Elizabeth of ever-glorious Memory, by Letters Patent, dated March the 25th, 1584.

¹ Written as late as 1736. See *post*. Unless that passage was an interpolation after the work was written.

But whether that Gentleman ever made a Voyage thither himself is uncertain ; because those who have favour'd the Public with an Account of His Life mention nothing of it. However, thus much may be depended on, that Sir Walter invited sundry persons of Distinction to Share in his Charter, and join their Purfes with his in the Laudable project of fitting out a Colony to Virginia.

Accordingly, 2 Ships were Sent away that very Year, under the Command of his good Friends Amidas and Barlow, to take possession of the Country in the Name of his Roial Mistress, the Queen of England.

These worthy Commanders, for the advantage of the Trade Winds, shap'd their Course first to the Charibbe Islands, thence stretching away by the Gulph of Florida, dropt Anchor not far from Roanoak Inlet. They ventured ashoar near that place upon an Island now called Colleton island, where they set up the Arms of England, and Claimed the Adjacent Country in Right of their Sovereign Lady, the Queen ; and this Ceremony being duly performed, they kindly invited the neighbouring Indians to traffick with them.

These poor people at first approacht the English with great Caution, having heard much of the Treachery of the Spaniards, and not knowing but these Strangers might be as treacherous as they. But, at length, discovering a kind of good nature in their looks, they ventured to draw near, and barter their Skins and Furs, for the Bawbles and Trinkets of the English.

These first Adventurers made a very profitable Voyage, raising at least a Thousand per cent. upon their Cargo. Amongst other Indian Commodities, they brought over Some of that bewitching Vegetable, Tobacco. And this being the first that ever came to England, Sir Walter thought he could do no less than make a present of Some of the brightest of it to His Roial Mistress, for her own Smoaking.

The Queen graciously accepted of it, but finding her Stomach sicken after two or three Whiffs, it was presently whispered by the earl of Leicester's Faction, that Sir Walter had certainly Poison'd Her. But Her Majesty soon recovering her Disorder, obliged the Countess of Nottingham and all her Maids to Smoak a whole Pipe out amongst them.

As it happen'd some Ages before to be the fashion to Santer to the Holy Land, and go upon other Quixot Adventures, so it was now grown the Humour to take a Trip to America. The Spaniards had lately discovered Rich Mines in their Part of the West Indies, which made their Maritime Neighbours eager to do so too. This Modish Frenzy being still more Inflam'd by the Charming Account given of Virginia, by the first Adventurers, made many fond of removeing to such a Paradise.

Happy was he, and still happier She, that cou'd get themselves transported, fondly expecting their Coardest Utenfils, in that happy place, would be of Massy Silver.

This made it easy for the Company to procure as many Volunteers as they wanted for their new Colony; but, like most other Undertakers who have no Assistance from the Public, they Starved the Design by too much Frugality; for, unwilling to Launch out at first into too much Expence, they Ship't off but few People at a Time, and Those but Scantily provided. The Adventurers were, besides, Idle and extravagant, and expected they might live without work in so plentiful a Country.

These Wretches were set Ashoar not far from Roanoak Inlet, but by some fatal disagreement, or Laziness, were either Starved or cut to Pieces by the Indians.

Several repeated Misadventures of this kind did, for some time, allay the Itch of Sailing to this New World; but the Distemper broke out again about the Year 1606. Then it happened that the Earl of Southampton and several other Persons, eminent for their Quality and Estates, were invited into the Company, who

1729
April

apply'd themselves once more to People the then almost abandon'd Colony. For this purpose they embarkt about an Hundred men, most of them Riprobates of good Familys, and related to some of the company, who were men of Quality and Fortune.

The Ships that carried them made a Shift to find a more direct way to Virginia, and ventured thro the Capes into the Bay of Chesapeak. The same Night they came to an Anchor at the Mouth of Powatan, the same as James River, where they built a Small Fort at a Place call'd Point Comfort.

This Settlement stood its ground from that time forward in spite of all the Blunders and Disagreement of the first Adventurers, and the many Calamitys that beset the Colony afterwards.

The six gentlemen who were first named of the company by the crown, and who were empowered to choose an annual President from among themselves, were always engaged in Factions and Quarrels, while the rest detested Work more than Famine. At this rate the Colony must have come to nothing, had it not been for the vigilance and Bravery of Capt. Smith, who struck a Terror into all the Indians round about. This Gentleman took some pains to perswade the men to plant Indian corn, but they lookt upon all Labour as a Curse. They chose rather to depend upon the Musty Provisions that were sent from England: and when they fail'd they were forc'd to take more pains to Seek for Wild Fruits in the Woods, than they woud have taken in tilling the Ground. Besides, this Exposed them to be knockt on the head by the Indians, and gave them Fluxes into the Bargain, which thind the Plantation very much. To Supply this mortality, they were reinforc'd the year following with a greater number of People, amongst which were fewer Gentlemen and more Labourers, who, however, took care not to kill themselves with Work.²

² This paragraph is in the form of a note in the manuscript, but the reader will perceive that it is a portion of the text. Ep.

These found the First Adventurers in a very starving condition, but relieved their wants with the fresh Supply they brought with them. From Kiquotan they extended themselves as far as James-Town, where like true Englishmen, they built a Church that cost no more than Fifty Pounds, and a Tavern that cost Five hundred.

They had now made peace with the Indians, but there was one thing wanting to make that peace lasting. The Natives could, by no means, persuade themselves that the English were heartily their Friends, so long as they disdained to intermarry with them. And, in earnest, had the English consulted their own Security and the good of the Colony—Had they intended either to Civilize or Convert these Gentiles, they would have brought their Stomachs to embrace this prudent Alliance.

The Indians are generally tall and well-proportion'd, which may make full Amends for the Darknes of their Complexions. Add to this, that they are healthy & Strong, with Constitutions untainted by Lewdness, and not enfeebled by Luxury. Besides, Morals and all considered, I cant think the Indians were much greater Heathens than the first Adventurers, who, had they been good Christians, would have had the Charity to take this only method of converting the Natives to Christianity. For, after all that can be said, a sprightly Lover is the most prevailing Missionary that can be sent amongst these, or any other Infidels.

Besides, the poor Indians would have had less reason to Complain that the English took away their Land, if they had received it by way of Portion with their Daughters. Had such Affinities been contracted in the Beginning, how much Bloodshed had been prevented, and how populous would the Country have been, and, consequently, how considerable? Nor wou'd the Shade of the Skin have been any reproach at this day; for if a Moor may be washt white in 3 Generations, Surely an Indian might have been blancht in two.

The French, for their Parts, have not been so Squeamish in Canada, who upon Trial find abundance of Attraction in the Indians. Their late Grand Monarch thought it not below even the Dignity of a Frenchman to become one flesh with this People, and therefore Ordered 100 Livres for any of his Subjects, Man or Woman, that woud intermarry with a Native.

By this piece of Policy we find the French Interest very much Strengthn'd amongst the Savages, and their Religion, such as it is, propagated just as far as their Love. And I heartily wish this well-concerted Scheme don't hereafter give the French an Advantage over his Majesty's good Subjects on the Northern Continent of America.

About the same time New England was pared off from Virginia by Letters Patent, bearing date April the 10th, 1608. Several Gentlemen of the Town and Neighborhood of Plymouth obtain'd this Grant, with the Ld Chief Justice Popham at their Head.

Their Bounds were Specified to Extend from 38 to 45 Degrees of Northern Latitude, with a Breadth of one Hundred Miles from the Sea Shore. The first 14 Years, this Company encounter'd many Difficulties, and lost many men, tho' far from being discouraged, they sent over Numerous Recruits of Presbyterians, every year, who for all that, had much ado to stand their Ground, with all their Fighting and Praying.

But about the year 1620, a Large Swarm of Dissenters fled thither from the Severities of their Stepmother, The Church. These Saints conceiving the same Aversion to the Copper Complexion of the Natives, with that of the first Adventurers to Virginia, would, on no Terms, contract Alliances with them, afraid perhaps, like the Jews of Old, lest they might be drawn into Idolatry by those Strange Women.

Whatever disgusted them I cant say, but this false delicacy creating in the Indians a Jealousy that the English were ill

affected towards them, was the Cause that many of them were cut off, and the rest Exposed to various Distresses.

This Reinforcement was landed not far from Cape Codd, where, for their greater Security they built a Fort, and near it a Small Town, which in Honour of the Proprietors, was call'd New Plymouth. But they Still had many discouragements to Struggle with, tho' by being well Supported from Home, they by Degrees Triumph't over them all.

Their Brethren, after this, flockt over so fast, that in a few Years they extended the Settlement one hundred Miles along the Coast, including Rhode Island and Martha's Vineyard.

Thus the Colony throve apace, and was throng'd with large Detachments of Independents and Presbyterians, who thought themselves persecuted at home.

Tho' these People may be ridicul'd for some Pharisaical Particularitys in their Worship and Behaviour, yet they were very useful Subjects, as being Frugal and Industrious, giving no Scandal or bad Example, at least by any Open and Public Vices. By which excellent Qualities they had much the Advantage of the Southern Colony, who thought their being Members of the Establish't Church sufficient to Sanctifie very loose and Profligate Morals. For this Reason New England improved much faster than Virginia, and in Seven or Eight Years New Plimouth, like Switzerland, seemd too Narrow a Territory for its Inhabitants.

For this Reason, several Gentlemen of Fortune purchas'd of the Company that Canton of New England now call'd Massachusetts colony. And King James confirm'd the Purchase by his Royal Charter, dated March the 4th, 1628. In less than 2 years after, above 1000 of the Puritanical Sect removed thither with considerable Effects, and these were followed by such Crowds, that a Proclamation was issued in England, forbidding any more of his Majesty's Subjects to be Shipt off. But this had the usual Effect of things forbidden, and serv'd only to make

the Wilful Independents flock over the faster. And about this time it was that Messrs. Hampden and Pym, and (some say) Oliver Cromwell, to shew how little they valued the King's Authority, took a Trip to New England.

In the Year 1630, the famous City of Boston was built, in a Commodious Situation for Trade and Navigation, the same being on a Peninsula at the Bottom of Massachusetts Bay.

This Town is now the most considerable of any on the British Continent, containing at least 8,000 houses and 40,000 Inhabitants. The Trade it drives, is very great to Europe, and to every Part of the West Indies, having near 1,000 Ships and lesser Vessels belonging to it.

Altho the Extent of the Massachusetts Colony reach't near one Hundred and Ten Miles in Length, and half as much in Breadth, yet many of its Inhabitants, thinking they wanted Elbow-room, quitted their Old Seats in the Year 1636, and formed 2 New Colonies: that of Connecticut and New Haven. These King Charles the 2d erected into one Government in 1664, and gave them many Valuable Priviledges, and among the rest, that of chusing their own Governors. The Extent of these united Colonies may be about Seventy Miles long and fifty broad.

Besides these several Settlements, there sprang up still another, a little more Northerly, called New Hampshire. But that consisting of no more than two Counties, and not being in condition to Support the Charge of a Distinct Government, was glad to be incorporated with that of Massachusetts, but upon Condition, however, of being Named in all Public Acts, for fear of being quite lost and forgot in the Coalition.

In like manner New Plymouth joyn'd itself to Massachusetts, except only Rhode Island, which, tho' of small Extent, got itself erected into a Separate government by a Charter from King Charles the 2d, soon after the Restoration, and continues so to this day.

These Governments all continued in Possession of their Respective Rights and Priviledges till the Year 1683, when that of Massachusets was made Void in England by a Quo Warranto.

In Consequence of which the King was pleased to name Sir Edmund Andros His first Governor of that Colony. This Gentleman, it seems, ruled them with a Rod of Iron till the Revolution, when they laid unhallowed Hands upon Him, and sent him Prisoner to England.

This undutiful proceeding met with an easy forgiveness at that happy Juncture. King William and his Royal Consort were not only pleas'd to overlook this Indignity offer'd to their Governor, but being made sensible how unfairly their Charter had been taken away, most graciously granted them a new one.

By this some new Franchises were given them, as an Equivalent for those of Coining Money and Electing a governour, which were taken away. However, the other Colonies of Connecticut and Rhode Island had the luck to remain in Possession of their Original Charters, which to this Day have never been call'd in Question.

The next Country dismember'd from Virginia was New Scotland, claim'd by the Crown of England in Virtue of the first Discovery by Sebastian Cabot. By Colour of this Title, King James the first granted it to Sir William Alexander by Patent, dated September the 10th, 1621.

But this Patentee never sending any Colony thither, and the French believing it very Convenient for them, obtain'd a Surrender of it from their good Friend and Ally, king Charles the 2d, by the Treaty of Breda. And, to show their gratitude, they stirr'd up the Indians soon after to annoy their Neighbours of New England. Murders happend continually to his Majesty's Subjects by their Means, till S^r William Phipps took their Town of Port Royal, in the year 1690. But as the English are better at taking than keeping Strong Places, the French retook it soon,

and remaind Masters of it till 1710, when General Nicholson wrested it, once more, out of their Hands.

Afterwards the Queen of Great Britain's Right to it was recognizd and confirmed by the treaty of Utrecht.

Another Limb lopt off from Virginia was New York, which the Dutch seized very unfairly, on pretence of having Purchasd it from Captain Hudson, the first Discoverer. Nor was their way of taking Possession of it a whit more justifiable than their pretended Title.

Their West India Company tamperd with some worthy English Skippers (who had contracted with a Swarm of English Dissenters to transport them to Hudson river) by no means to land them there, but to carry 'em some leagues more northerly.

This Dutch Finesse took Exactly, and gave the Company time soon after to seize the Hudson River for themselves. But St Samuel Argall, then governor of Virginia, understanding how the King's Subjects had been abused by these Republicans, marcht thither with a good Force, and obligd them to renounce all pretensions to that Country. The worst of it was, the Knight depended on their Parole to Ship themselves to Brasile, but took no measures to make this Slippery People as good as their Word.

No sooner was the good Governor retired, but the honest Dutch began to build Forts and strengthen themselves in their ill-gotten Possessions; nor did any of the King's Liege People take the trouble to drive these Intruders thence. The Civil War in England, And the Confusions it brought forth, allowed no Leisure for such distant Considerations. Tho tis strange that the Protector, who neglected no Occasion to mortify the Dutch, did not afterwards call them to Account for this breach of Faith. However, after the Restoration, the King sent a Squadron of his Ships of War, under the Command of Sir Robert Carr, and reduced that Province to his Obedience.

Some time after, His Majesty was Pleas'd to grant that Coun-

try to his Royal Highness, the Duke of York, by Letters Patent, dated March the 12th, 1664. But to shew the Modesty of the Dutch to the Life, tho they had no Shaddow of Right to New York, yet they demanded Surinam, a more valuable Country, as an Equivalent for it, and our able Ministers at that time had the Generosity to give it them.

But what wounded Virginia deepest was the cutting off MARYLAND from it, by Charter from King Charles the 1st, to sir George Calvert, afterwards Ld Baltimore, bearing Date the 20th of June, 1632. The Truth of it is, it begat much Speculation in those days, how it came about that a good Protestant King should bestow so bountiful a Grant upon a Zealous Roman catholic. But 'tis probable it was one fatal Instance amongst many other of his Majesty's complaisance to the Queen.

However that happened, 'tis certain this Province afterwards provd a Commodious Retreat for Persons of that Communion. The Memory of the Gun-Powder-Treason-Plot was Still fresh in every body's mind, and made England too hot for Papists to live in, without danger of being burnt with the Pope, every 5th of November; for which reason Legions of them transplanted themselves to Maryland in Order to be Safe, as well from the Influence of the Populace as the Rigour of the Government.

Not only the Gun-Powder-Treason, but every other Plot, both pretended and real, that has been trump't up in England ever Since, has helpt to People his Lordship's Propriety.

But what has provd most Serviceable to it was the Grand Rebellion against King Charles the 1st, when every thing that bore the least tokens of Popery was sure to be demolisht, and every man that Professd it was in Jeopardy of Suffering the same kind of Martyrdom the Romish Priests do in Sweden.

Soon after the Reduction of New York, the Duke was pleas'd to grant out of it all that Tract of Land included between Hudson and Delaware Rivers, to the Lord Berkley and Sir George

Carteret, by Deed dated June the 24th, 1664. And when these Grantees came to make Partition of this Territory, His Lordp's Moiety was calid West Jersey, and that to Sir George, East Jersey.

But before the Date of this Grant, the Swedes began to gain Footing in part of that Country ; tho, after they saw the Fate of New York, they were glad to Submit to the King of England, on the easy Terms of remaining in their Possessions, and rendering a Moderate Quit-rent. Their Posterity continue there to this Day, and think their Lot cast in a much fairer Land than Dalicaria.

The Proprietors of New Jersey, finding more Trouble than Profit in their new Dominions, made over their Right to several other Persons, who obtained a fresh Grant from his Royal Highness, dated March the 14th, 1682.

Several of the Grantees, being Quakers and Anabaptists, faild not to encourage many of their own Perswasion to remove to this Peaceful Region. Amongst them were a Swarm of Scots Quakers, who were not tolerated to exercise the Gifts of the Spirit in their own Country.

Besides the hopes of being Safe from Persecution in this Retreat, the New Proprietors inveigled many over by this tempting Account of the Country : that it was a Place free from those 3 great Scourges of Mankind, Priests, Lawyers, and Physicians. Nor did they tell a Word of a Lye, for the People were yet too poor to maintain these Learned Gentlemen, who, every where, love to be paid well for what they do ; and, like the Jews, cant breathe in a Climate where nothing is to be got.

The Jerseys continued under the Government of these Proprietors till the Year 1702, when they made a formal Surrender of the Dominion to the Queen, reserving however the Property of the Soil to themselves. So soon as the Bounds of New Jersey came to be distinctly laid off, it appeared that there was still

a Narrow Slipe of Land, lying betwixt that Colony and Maryland. Of this, William Penn, a Man of much Worldly Wisdome, and some Eminence among the Quakers, got early Notice, and, by the Credit he had with the Duke of York, obtaind a Patent for it, Dated March the 4th, 1680.

It was a little Surprising to some People how a Quaker should be so much in the good Graces of a Popish Prince; tho, after all, it may be pretty well Accounted for. This Ingenious Person had not been bred a Quaker; but, in his Earlier days, had been a Man of Pleasure about the Town. He had a beautiful form and very taking Address, which made him Successful with the Ladies, and particularly with a Mistress of the Duke of Monmouth. By this Gentlewoman he had a Daughter, who had Beauty enough to raise her to be a Dutchesse, and continued to be a Toast full 30 Years.

But this Amour had like to have brought our Fine Gentleman in Danger of a Duell, had he not discreetly shelterd himself under this peaceable Perswasion. Besides, his Father having been a Flag-Officer in the Navy, while the Duke of York was Lord High Admiral, might recommend the Son to his Favour. This piece of Secret History I thought proper to mention, to wipe off the Suspicion of his having been Popishly inclin'd.

This Gentleman's first Grant confin'd Him within pretty Narrow Bounds, giving him only that Portion of Land which contains Buckingham, Philadelphia and Chester Counties. But to get these Bounds a little extended, He pusht His Interest still further with His Royal Highness, and obtaind a fresh Grant of the three Lower Counties, called New-Castle, Kent and Suffex, which still remaind within the New York Patent, and had been luckily left out of the Grant of New Jersey.

The Six Counties being thus incorporated, the Proprietor dignifyd the whole with the Name of Pensilvania.

The Quakers flockt over to this Country in Shoals, being

averse to go to Heaven the same way with the Bishops. Amongst them were not a few of good Substance, who went Vigorously upon every kind of Improvement; and thus much I may truly say in their Praise, that by Diligence and Frugality, For which this Harmless Sect is remarkable, and by having no Vices but such as are Private, they have in a few Years made Pensilvania a very fine Country.

The Truth is, they have observed exact Justice with all the Natives that border upon them; they have purchased all their Lands from the Indians; and tho they paid but a Trifle for them, it has procured them the Credit of being more righteous than their Neighbours. They have likewise had the Prudence to treat them kindly upon all Occasions, which has saved them from many Wars and Massacres wherein the other Colonies have been indiscreetly involved. The truth of it is, a People whose Principles forbid them to draw the Carnal Sword, were in the Right to give no Provocation.

Both the French and Spaniards had, in the Name of their Respective Monarchs, long ago taken Possession of that Part of the Northern Continent that now goes by the Name of Carolina; but finding it Produced neither Gold nor Silver, as they greedily expected, and meeting such returns from the Indians as their own Cruelty and Treachery deserved, they totally abandoned it. In this deserted Condition that country lay for the Space of 90 Years, till King Charles the 2d, finding it a DERELICT, granted it away to the Earl of Clarendon and others, by His Royal Charter, dated March the 24th, 1663. The Boundary of that Grant towards Virginia was a due West Line from Luck-Island, (the same as Colleton Island,) lying in 36 degrees N. Latitude, quite to the South Sea.

But afterwards Sir William Berkeley, who was one of the Grantees and at that time Governour of Virginia, finding a Territory of 31 Miles in Breadth between the Inhabited Part of Virginia

and the above-mentioned Boundary of Carolina, advisd the Lord Clarendon of it. And His Lordp had Interest enough with the King to obtain a Second Patent to include it, dated June the 30th, 1665.

This last Grant describes the Bounds between Virginia and Carolina in these Words: "To run from the North End of Corotuck-Inlet, due West to Weyanoke Creek, lying within or about the Degree of Thirty-Six and Thirty Minutes of Northern Latitude, and from thence West, in a direct Line, as far as the South-Sea." Without question, this Boundary was well known at the time the Charter was Granted, but in a long Course of years Weynoke Creek lost its name, so that it became a Controversy where it lay. Some Ancient Persons in Virginia affirmd it was the same with Wicocon, and others again in Carolina were as Positive it was Nottoway River.

In the mean time, the People on the Frontiers Enterd for Land, & took out Patents by Guess, either from the King or the Lords Proprietors. But the Crown was like to be the loser by this Incertainty, because the Terms both of taking up and seating Land were easier much in Carolina. The Yearly Taxes to the Public were likewise there less burthenfome, which laid Virginia under a Plain disadvantage.

This Consideration put that Government upon entering into Measures with North Carolina, to terminate the Dispute, and settle a Certain Boundary between the two colonies. All the Difficulty was, to find out which was truly Weyanoke Creek. The Difference was too Considerable to be given up by either side, there being a Territory of 15 Miles betwixt the two Streams in controversy.

However, till that Matter could be adjusted, it was agreed on both sides, that no Lands at all Should be granted within the disputed Bounds. Virginia observed this Agreement punctually, but I am sorry I cant say the Same of North-Carolina. The

great Officers of that Province were loath to lose the Fees accruing from the Grants of Land, and so private Interest got the better of Public Spirit; and I wish that were the only Place in the World where such politicks are fashionable.

All the Steps that were taken afterwards in that Affair, will best appear by the Report of the Virginia-Commissioners, recited in the Order of Council given at St. James's, March the 1st, 1710, set down in the Appendix.

It must be owned, the Report of those Gentlemen was Severe upon the then commissioners of North-Carolina, and particularly upon Mr. Moseley. I wont take upon me to say with how much Justice they said so many hard things, tho it had been fairer Play to have given the Parties accus'd a Copy of such Representation, that they might have answerd what they could for themselves.

But since that was not done, I must beg leave to say thus much in behalf of Mr. Moseley, that he was not much in the Wrong to find fault with the Quadrant produced by the Surveyors of Virginia, because that Instrument plac'd the Mouth of Notoway River in the Latitude of 37 Degrees; whereas, by an Accurate Observation made Since, it appears to lie in $36^{\circ} 30' \frac{1}{2}'$, so that there was an Error of near 30 minutes, either in the Instrument or in those who made use of it.

Besides, it is evident the Mouth of Notoway River agrees much better with the Latitude, wherein the Carolina Charter supposed Wyanoak Creek, (namely, in or about 36 Degrees and 30 minutes,) than it does with Wicocon Creek, which is about 15 Miles more Southerly.

This being manifest, the Intention of the King's Grant will be pretty exactly answerd, by a due West Line drawn from Corotuck Inlet to the Mouth of Notaway River, for which reason tis probable that was formerly call'd Wyanoak-Creek, and might change its Name when the Nottoway Indians came to

live upon it, which was since the Date of the last Carolina Charter.

The Lievt Governor of Virginia, at that time Colo Spotswood, searching into the Bottom of this Affair, made very Equitable Proposals to Mr. Eden, at that time Governour of North Carolina, in Order to put an End to this Controversy. These, being formd into Preliminaries, were Signd by both Governours, and transmitted to England, where they had the Honour to be ratified by his late Majesty and Assented to by the Lords Proprietors of Carolina.

Accordingly an Order was sent by the late King to Mr. Gooch, afterwards Lievt Governor of Virginia, to pursue those Preliminaries exactly. In Obedience thereunto, he was pleased to appoint Three of the Council of that colony to be Commissioners on the Part of Virginia, who, in Conjunction with others to be named by the Governor of North Carolina, were to settle the Boundary between the 2 Governments, upon the Plan of the above-mentiond Articles.

Two Experient Surveyors were at the same time directed to wait upon the Commissioners, Mr. Mayo, who made the Accurate Mapp of Barbadoes, and Mr. Irvin, the Mathematick Professer of William and Mary Colledge. And because a good Number of Men were to go upon this Expedition, a Chaplain was appointed to attend them, and the rather because the People on the Frontiers of North-Carolina, who have no Minister near them, might have an Opportunity to get themselves and their Children baptizd.

Of these proceedings on our Part, immediate Notice was sent to Sir Richard Everard, Governor of North Carolina, who was desired to Name Commissioners for that Province, to meet those of Virginia at Crotuck-Inlet the Spring following. Accordingly he appointed Four Members of the Council of that Province to take Care of the Interests of the Lds Proprietors. * Of these,

1728
February

1728 Mr. Moseley was to serve in a Double Capacity, both as Com-
 February missioner and Surveyor. For that reason there was but one
 other Surveyor from thence, Mr. Swan. All the Persons being
 thus agreed upon, they settled the time of Meeting to be at Co-
 rotuck, March the 5th, 1728.

In the Mean time, the requisite Preparations were made for so
 long and tiresome a Journey; and because there was much work
 to be done and some Danger from the Indians, in the uninhabited
 Part of the Country, it was necessary to provide a Competent
 Number of Men. Accordingly, Seventeen able Hands were
 listed on the Part of Virginia, who were most of them Indian
 Traders and expert Woodsmen.

- 27 These good men were ordered to come armed with a Musquet
 and a Tomahack, or large Hatchet, and provided with a Suffi-
 cient Quantity of Ammunition.

They likewise brought Provisions of their own for ten days,
 after which time they were to be furnished by the Government.
 Their March was appointed to be on the 27th of February, on
 which day one of the Commissioners met them at their Rendez-
 vous, and proceeded with them as far as Colo Allen's. This
 Gentleman is a great œconomist, and Skilful in all the Arts of
 living well at an easy expense.

- 28 They proceeded in good Order through Surry County, as far
 as the Widdow Allen's who had copied Solomon's complete
 houswife exactly. At this Gentlewoman's House, the other
 two Commissioners had appointed to join them, but were de-
 tained by some Accident at Williamsburg, longer than their ap-
 pointment.

- 29 They pursued their march thro the Isle of Wight and observed
 a most dreadful Havock made by a late Hurricane, which hap-
 pend in August, 1726. The Violence of it had not reachd
 above a Quarter of a Mile in Breadth, but within that Compass
 had levelld all before it. Both Trees and Houses were laid flat

on the Ground, and several things hurl'd to an incredible distance. 1728
 Tis happy such violent Gusts are confin'd to so narrow a Chan- February
 nel, because they carry desolation wherever they go. In the
 Evening they reacht Mr. Godwin's, on the South Branch of
 Nansemond River, where they were treated with abundance of
 Primitive Hospitality.

March 1. This Gentleman was so kind as to shorten their March
 Journey, by setting them over the river. They coasted the
 N E Side of the Dismal for several miles together, and found all
 the Grounds bordering upon it very full of Sloughs. The Trees
 that grew near it lookt very Reverend, with the long Moss that
 hung dangling from their Branches. Both cattle and Horses eat
 this Moss greedily in Winter when other Provender is Scarce,
 tho it is apt to scowr them at first. In that moist Soil too grew
 abundance of that kind of Myrtle which bears the Candle-
 Berries. There was likewise, here and there, a Gall-bush,
 which is a beautiful Evergreen, and may be cut into any Shape.
 It derives its name from its Berries turning Water black, like
 the Galls of an oak.

When this Shrub is transplanted into Gardens, it will not
 thrive without frequent watering.

The two other commissioners came up with them just at their
 Journey's end, and that evening they arriv'd all together at Mr.
 Craford's, who lives on the South Branch of Elizabeth-River,
 over against Norfolk. Here the Commissioners left the Men
 with all the Horses and heavy Baggage, and cross'd the River
 with their Servants only, for fear of making a Famine in the
 Town.

Norfolk has most the ay of a Town of any in Virginia. There
 were then near 20 Brigantines and Sloops riding at the Wharves,
 and oftentimes they have more. It has all the advantages of
 Situation requisite for Trade and Navigation. There is a Secure
 Harbour for a good Number of Ships of any Burthen. Their

1728
March

River divides itself into 3 Several Branches, which are all Navigable. The Town is so near the sea, that its Vessels may Sail in and out in a few Hours. Their Trade is Chiefly to the West-Indies, whither they export abundance of Beef, Pork, Flour and Lumber. The worst of it is, they contribute much towards debauching the Country by importing abundance of Rum, which, like Ginn in Great Britain, breaks the Constitution, Vitiates the Morals, and ruins the Industry of most of the Poor people of this Country.

This Place is the Mart for most of the Commodities produced in the Adjacent Parts of North Carolina. They have a pretty deal of Lumber from the Borderers on the Disfmal, who make bold with the King's Land thereabouts, without the least Ceremony. They not only maintain their Stocks upon it, but get Boards, Shingles and other Lumber out of it in great Abundance.

The Town is built on a level Spot of Ground upon Elizabeth River, the Banks whereof are neither so high as to make the landing of Goods troublesome, or so low as to be in Danger of overflowing. The Streets are Straight, and adorned with several Good Houses, which Encrease every Day. It is not a Town of Ordinaries and Publick Houses, like most others in this Country, but the Inhabitants consist of Merchants, Ship-Carpenters and other useful Artisans, with Sailors enough to manage their Navigation. With all these Conveniences, it lies under the two great disadvantages that most of the Towns in Holland do, by having neither good Air nor good Water. The two Cardinal Vertues that make a Place thrive, Industry and Frugality, are seen here in Perfection; and so long as they can banish Luxury and Idleness, the Town will remain in a happy and flourishing Condition.

The Method of building Wharffs here is after the following Manner. They lay down long Pine Logs, that reach from the Shore to the Edge of the Channel. These are bound fast to-

gether by Cross-Pieces notcht into them, according to the Architecture of the Log-Houses in North Carolina. A wharff built thus will stand Several Years, in spite of the Worm, which bites here very much, but may be soon repaired in a Place where so many Pines grow in the Neighbourhood.

1728
March

The Commissioners endeavoured, in this Town, to list Three more men to serve as Guides in that dirty Part of the Country, but found that these People knew just enough of that frightful Place to avoid it.

They had been told that those Netherlands were full of Bogs, of Marshes and Swamps, not fit for Human Creatures to engage in, and this was Reason enough for them not to hazard their Persons. So they told us, flat and plain, that we might een daggel thro the mire by Our-Selves for them.

The worst of it was, we could not learn from any body in this Town, what Rout to take to Coratuck Inlet; till at last we had the fortune to meet with a Borderer upon North Carolina, who made a rough Sketch of that Part of the Country. Thus, upon seeing how the Land lay, we determined to march directly to Prescot Landing upon N W River, and proceed from thence by Water to the Place where our Line was to begin.

In Pursuance of this Resolution we crossed the River this Morn-^{4th}ing to Powder-Point, where we all took Horse; and the Grandees of the Town, with great Courtesy, conducted us Ten Miles on our way, as far as the long Bridge built over the S Branch of the River. The Parson of the Parish, Mr. Marston, a painful Apostle from the Society, made one in this Ceremonious Cavalcade.

At the Bridge, these Gentlemen, wishing us a good Deliverance, returned, and then a Troop of Light Horse escorted us as far as Prescot-Landing, upon N W river. Care had been taken beforehand to provide 2 Periaugas to lie ready at that Place to transport us to Coratuck Inlet. Our Zeal was so great to get

1728 March thither at the time appointed, that we hardly allowd ourselves leisure to eat, which in truth we had the less Stomach to, by reason the dinner was served up by the Landlord, whose Nose stood on such ticklish Terms, that it was in Danger of falling into the Dish. We therefore made our Repast very short, and then embarkt with only the Surveyors and Nine chosen Men, leaving the rest at Mr. W——n's to take Care of the Horses and Baggage. There we also left our Chaplain, with the Charitable Intent, that the Gentiles round about might have time and Opportunity, if they pleas'd, of getting themselves and their children baptizd.

We rowd down N W River about 18 miles, as far as the Mouth of it, where it empties itself into Albermarle Sound. It was a really Delightful Sight, all the way, to see the Banks of the River adorn'd with Myrtle, Laurel and Bay Trees, which preserve their Verdure the Year round, tho it must be ownd that these beautiful Plants, Sacred to Venus and Apollo, grow commonly in a very dirty Soil. The River is, in most Places, fifty or Sixty Yards wide, without spreading much wider at the Mouth. 'Tis remarkable it was never known to Ebb and flow till the year 1713, when a Violent Storm opend a new Inlet, about 5 Miles South of the old one; since which Convulsion, the Old Inlet is almost choak'd up by the Shifting of the Sand, and grows both Narrower and Shoaller every day.

It was dark before we could reach the Mouth of the River, where our wayward Stars directed us to a Miserable Cottage. The Landlord was lately removed, Bag and Baggage, from Maryland, thro a Strong Antipathy he had to work and paying his Debts. For want of our Tent, we were oblig'd to Shelter our Selves in this wretched Hovel, where we were almost devour'd by Vermin of Various kinds. However, we were above complaining, being all Philosophers enough to improve such Slender Distresses into Mirth and good Humour.

5. The Day being now come, on which we had agreed to meet the Commissioners of North Carolina, we embarkd very early, which we could the easier do, having no Temptation to stay where we were. We Shapt our Course along the South End of Knot's Island, there being no Passage open on the North. 1728
March

Farther Still to the Southward of us, we discoverd two Smaller Islands, that go by the names of Bell's and Church's Isles. We also saw a small New England Sloop riding in the Sound, a little to the South of our Course. She had come in at the New-Inlet, as all other Vessels have done since the opening of it. This Navigation is a little difficult, and fit only for Vessels that draw no more than ten feet Water.

The Trade hither is engross'd by the Saints of New England, who carry off a great deal of Tobacco, without troubling themselves with paying that Impertinent Duty of a Penny a Pound.

It was just Noon before we arrivd at Coratuck Inlet, which is now so shallow that the Breakers fly over it with a horrible Sound, and at the same time afford a very wild Prospect. On the North side of the Inlet, the High Land terminated in a Bluff Point, from which a Spit of Sand extended itself towards the South-East, full half a Mile. The Inlet lies between that Spit and another on the South of it, leaving an Opening of not quite a Mile, which at this day is not practicable for any Vessel whatsoever. And as shallow as it now is, it continues to fill up more and more, both the Wind and Waves rolling in the Sands from the Eastern Shoals.

About two a Clock in the Afternoon we were join'd by two of the Carolina Commissioners, attended by Mr. S—n, their Surveyor. The other two were not quite so punctual, which was the more unlucky for us, because there could be no sport till they came. These Gentlemen, it seems, had the Carolina-Commission in their keeping, notwithstanding which they could

1728
March not forbear paying too much regard to a Proverb—fashionable in their Country,—not to make more haſt than good Speed.

However, that we who were punctual might not ſpend our precious time unprofitably, we took the Several bearings of the Coaſt. We alſo ſurveyd part of the Adjacent High Land, which had ſcarcely any Trees growing upon it, but Cedars. Among the Shrubs, we were ſhewed here and there a Buſh of Carolina-Tea calld Japon, which is one Species of the Phylarrea. This is an Evergreen, the Leavs whereof have ſome reſemblance to Tea, but differ very widely both in Taſt and Flavour.

We alſo found ſome few Plants of the Spired Leaf Silk graſs, which is likewiſe an Evergreen, bearing on a lofty Stem a large Cluster of Flowers of a Pale Yellow. Of the Leaves of this Plant the People thereabouts twiſt very ſtrong Cordage.

A virtuoso might divert himſelf here very well, in picking up Shells of various Hue and Figure, and amongſt the reſt, that Species of Conque Shell which the Indian Peak is made of. The Extremities of theſe Shells are Blue and the reſt white, ſo that Peak of both theſe Colours are drilld out of one and the ſame Shell, Serving the Natives both for Ornament and Money, and are eſteemd by them far beyond Gold and Silver.

The Cedars were of Singular uſe to us in the Abſence of our Tent, which we had left with the reſt of the Baggage for fear of overloading the Periaugas. We made a Circular Hedge of the Branches of this Tree, Wrought ſo cloſe together as to fence us againſt the Cold Winds. We then kindled a rouſeing fire in the Center of it, and lay round it, like ſo many Knights Templars. But, as comfortable as this Lodging was, the Surveyors turnd out about 2 in the Morning to try the Variation by a Meridian taken from the North Star, and found it to be ſome-what leſs than three degrees Weſt.

The Commiſſioners of the Neighbouring Colony came better provided for the Belly than the Buſineſs. They brought not

above two men along with them that would put their Hands to any thing but the Kettle and the Frying-Pan. These spent so much of their Industry that way, that they had as little Spirit as Inclination for Work. 1728
March

At Noon, having a Perfect Observation, we found the Latitude of Coratuck Inlet to be 36 Degrees and 31 Minutes.

Whilst we were busied about these Necessary Matters, our Skipper row'd to an Oyfter Bank just by, and loaded his Periauga with Oysters as Savoury and well-tasted as those from Colchester or Walfleet, and had the advantage of them, too, by being much larger and fatter.

About 3 in the Afternoon the two lagg Commissioners arriv'd, and after a few decent excuses for making us wait, told us they were ready to enter upon Business as soon as we pleas'd. The first Step was to produce our respective Powers, and the Commission from each Governor was distinctly read, and Copies of them interchangeably deliver'd.

It was observ'd by our Carolina Friends, that the Latter Part of the Virginia Commission had something in it a little too lordly and Positive. In answer to which we told them twas necessary to make it thus peremptory, lest the present Commissioners might go upon as fruitless an Errand as their Predecessors. The former Commissioners were ty'd down to Act in Exact Conjunction with those of Carolina, and so could not advance one Step farther, or one Jot faster, than they were pleas'd to permit them.

The Memory of that disappointment, therefore, induc'd the Government of Virginia to give fuller Powers to the present Commissioners, by Authorizing them to go on with the Work by Themselves, in Case those of Carolina should prove unreasonable, and refuse to join with them in carrying the business to Execution. And all this was done lest His Majesty's gracious Intention should be frustrated a Second time.

1728
March

After both Commissions were considered, the first Question was, where the Dividing Line was to begin. This begat a Warm debate; the Virginia Commissioners contending, with a great deal of Reason, to begin at the End of the Spitt of Sand, which was undoubtedly the North Shore of Coratuck Inlet. But those of Carolina insisted Strenuously, that the Point of High Land ought rather to be the Place of Beginning, because that was fixt and certain, whereas the Spitt of Sand was ever Shifting, and did actually run out farther now than formerly. The Contest lasted some Hours, with great Vehemence, neither Party receding from their Opinion that Night. But next Morning, Mr. M., to convince us he was not that Obstinate Person he had been represented, yielded to our Reasons, and found Means to bring over his Collegues.

Here we began already to reap the Benefit of those Peremptory Words in our Commission, which in truth added some Weight to our Reasons. Nevertheless, because positive proof was made by the Oaths of two Credible Witnesses, that the Spitt of Sand had advanced 200 Yards towards the Inlet since the Controversy first began, we were willing for Peace-sake to make them that allowance. Accordingly we fixed our Beginning about that Distance North of the Inlet, and there Ordered a Cedar-Post to be driven deep into the Sand for our beginning. While we continued here, we were told that on the South Shore, not far from the Inlet, dwelt a Marooner, that Modestly call'd himself a Hermit, tho' he forfeited that Name by Suffering a wanton Female to cohabit with Him.

His Habitation was a Bower, cover'd with Bark after the Indian Fashion, which in that mild Situation protected him pretty well from the Weather. Like the Ravens, he neither plow'd nor sow'd, but Subsisted chiefly upon Oysters, which his Handmaid made a Shift to gather from the Adjacent Rocks. Sometimes, too, for Change of Dyet, he sent her to drive up the Neighbour's

Cows, to moisten their Mouths with a little Milk. But as for ¹⁷²⁸ raiment, he depended mostly upon his Length of Beard, and ^{March} She upon her Length of Hair, part of which she brought decently forward, and the rest dangled behind quite down to her Rump, like one of Herodotus's East Indian Pigmies.

Thus did these Wretches live in a dirty State of Nature, and were mere Adamites, Innocence only excepted.

This Morning the Surveyors began to run the Dividing line ⁷ from the Cedar-Post we had driven into the Sand, allowing near 3 Degrees for the Variation. Without making this Just allowance, we should not have obeyd his Majesty's order in running a Due West Line. It seems the former Commissioners had not been so exact, which gave our Friends of Carolina but too just an Exception to their Proceedings.

The Line cut Dofier's Island, consisting only of a Flat Sand, with here and there an humble Shrub growing upon it. From thence it crost over a narrow Arm of the Sound into Knot's Island, and there Split a Plantation belonging to William Harding.

The Day being far spent, we encampt in this Man's Pasture, tho' it lay very low, and the Season now inclin'd People to Aguish Distempers. He sufferd us to cut Cedar-Branches for our Enclosure, and other Wood for Firing, to correct the moist Air and drive away the Damps. Our Landlady, in the Days of her Youth, it seems, had been a Laundress in the Temple, and talkt over her Adventures in that Station, with as much pleasure as an Old Soldier talks over his Battles and Distempers, and I believe with as many Additions to the Truth.

The Soil is good in many Places of this Island, and the Extent of it pretty large. It lyes in the form of a Wedge: the South End of it is Several Miles over, but towards the North it Sharpens into a Point. It is a Plentiful Place for Stock, by reason of the wide Marshes adjacent to it, and because of its

1728 warm Situation. But the Inhabitants pay a little dear for this
 March Convenience, by losing as much Blood in the Summer Season
 by the infinite Number of Mosquetas, as all their Beef and Pork
 can recruit in the Winter.

The Sheep are as large as in Lincolnshire, because they are never pincht by cold or Hunger. The whole Island was hitherto reckon'd to lye in Virginia, but now our Line has given the greater Part of it to Carolina. The Principal Freeholder here is Mr. White, who keeps open Houfe for all Travellers, that either Debt or Shipwreck happens to cast in his way.

- 8 By break of Day we sent away our Largest Periauga, with the Baggage, round the South end of Knot's Island, with Orders to the Men to wait for us in the Mouth of North River. Soon after, we embarkt ourselves on board the smaller Vessel, with Intent, if possible, to find a Passage round the North End of the Island.

We found this Navigation very difficult, by reason of the Continued Shoals, and often stuck fast aground; for tho' the Sound spreads many miles, yet it is in most places extremely Shallow, and requires a Skilful Pilot to Steer even a Canoe safe over it. It was almost as hard to keep our Temper as to keep the Channel, in this provoking Situation. But the most impatient amongst us strokt down their Choler and swallow'd their curses, lest, if they suffer'd them to break out, they might sound like Complaining, which was expressly forbid, as the first Step to Sedition.

At a distance we descry'd Several Islands to the Northward of us, the largest of which goes by the Name of Cedar Island. Our periauga stuck so often that we had a fair chance to be benighted in this wide Water, which must certainly have been our Fate, had we not luckily spied a Canoe that was giving a Fortune-teller a cast from Princess Anne County over to North Carolina. But, as conjurers are Sometimes mistaken, the Man mistrusted

we were Officers of Justice in pursuit of a Young Wench he had carry'd off along with him. We gave the Canoe Chase for more than an Hour and when we came up with her, threaten'd to make them all prisoners unless they would direct us into the right Channel. 1728
March

By the Pilotage of these People we row'd up an Arm of the Sound, call'd the Back-Bay, till we came to the Head of it. There we were stoppt by a miry Pocoson full half a Mile in Breadth, thro' which we were oblig'd to dabble on foot, plunging now and then, tho' we pickt our Way, up to the Knees in Mud. At the End of this Charming walk we gain'd the Terra Firma of Princess Anne County. In that Dirty Condition we were afterwards oblig'd to foot it two Miles, as far as John Heath's Plantation, where we expected to meet the Surveyors & the men who waited upon them.

While we were performing this tedious Voyage, they had carried the Line thro' the firm Land of Knot's Island, where it was no more than half a Mile wide. After that they travers'd a large Marsh, that was exceeding Miry, and extended to an Arm of the Back Bay. They cross'd that water in a Canoe, which we had order'd round for that Purpose, and then waded over another Marsh, that reacht quite to the High Land of of Princess Anne. Both these Marshes together make a breadth of five Miles, in which the Men frequently sunk up to the Middle without muttering the least complaint. On the contrary, they turn'd all these Disasters into Merriment.

It was discover'd, by this day's Work, that Knot's Island was improperly so call'd, being in Truth no more than a Peninsula. The N W Side of it is only divided from the Main by the great Marsh above-mentioned, which is seldom totally overflow'd. Instead of that, it might, by the Labour of a few Trenches, be drain'd into firm Meadow, capable of grazing as many cattle as Job, in his best Estate, was master of. In the Miry Condition

1728
March

it now lies, it feeds great Numbers in the Winter, tho', when the Weather grows warm, they are driven from thence by the Mighty Armies of Mosquettas, which are the Plague of the lower Part of Carolina, as much as the Flies were formerly of Egypt, and some Rabbis think those Flies were no other than Musquettas.

All the People in the Neighbourhood flockt to John Heath's, to behold such Rarities as they fancied us to be. The Men left their belov'd Chimney Corners, the good women their Spinning Wheels, and some, of more Curiosity than Ordinary, rose out of their sick Beds, to come and stare at us. They lookt upon us as a Troop of Knight Errants, who were running this great Risque of our Lives, as they imagin'd, for the Publick Weal; and some of the gravest of them question'd much whether we were not all Criminals, condemned to this dirty work for Offences against the State.

What puzzled them most was, what cou'd make our men so very Light-hearted under such intolerable Drudgery. "Ye have little reason to be merry, My Masters," said one of them, with a very solemn Face, "I fancy the Pocofon you must Struggle with to-morrow will make you change your Note, and try what Metal you are made of. Ye are, to be sure, the first of Human Race that ever had the Boldness to attempt it, and I dare say will be the last. If, therefore, you have any Worldly Goods to dispose of, My Advice is that you make your Wills this very Night, for fear you die Intestate to-Morrow." But, alas! these frightfull Tales were so far from disheartening the men, that they serv'd only to whet their Resolution.

- 9 The Surveyors enter'd Early upon their Business this Morning, and ran the Line thro' Mr. Eyland's Plantation, as far as the Banks of North River. They pass'd over it in the Periauga, and landed in Gibbs' Marsh, which was a mile in Breadth, and tolerably firm. They trudg'd thro' this Marsh without much

difficulty as far as the High Land, which promis'd more Fertility than any they had seen in these lower Parts. But this firm Land lasted not long before they came upon the dreadful Pocoson they had been threaten'd with. Nor did they find it one Jot better than it had been painted to them. The Beavers and Otters had render'd it quite impassable for any Creature but themselves.

1728
March

Our poor Fellows had much ado to drag their Legs after them in this Quagmire, but disdaining to be baulkt, they cou'd hardly be perswaded from pressing forward by the Surveyors, who found it absolutely Necessary to make a Traverse in the Deepest Place, to prevent their Sticking fast in the Mire, and becoming a Certain Prey to the Turkey-Buzzards.

This Horrible Day's Work Ended two Miles to the Northward of Mr. Merchant's Plantation, divided from NW River by a Narrow Swamp, which is causeway'd over. We took up our Quarters in the open Field, not far from the House, correcting, by a Fire as large as a Roman-Funeral-Pile, the Aguish Exhalations arising from the Sunken Grounds that Surrounded us.

The Neck of Land included betwixt N River and N-West River, with the adjacent Marsh, belong'd formerly to Governor Gibbs, but since his Decease to Colonel Bladen, in right of his first Lady, who was Mr. Gibbs' Daughter. It would be a Valuable Tract of Land in any Country but North Carolina, where, for want of Navigation and Commerce, the best Estate affords little more than a coarse Subsistence.

The Sabbath happen'd very opportunely to give some ease to our jaded People, who rested religiously from every work, but that of cooking the Kettle. We observed very few corn-fields in our Walks, and those very small, which seem'd the Stranger to us, because we could see no other Tokens of Husbandry or Improvement. But, upon further Inquiry, we were given to

1728 understand People only made Corn for themselves and not for
 March their Stocks, which know very well how to get their own
 Living.

Both Cattle and Hogs ramble in the Neighbouring Marshes and Swamps, where they maintain themselves the whole Winter long, and are not fetch'd home till the Spring. Thus these Indolent Wretches, during one half of the Year, lose the Advantage of the Milk of their cattle, as well as their Dung, and many of the poor Creatures perish in the Mire, into the Bargain, by this ill Management.

Some, who pique themselves more upon Industry than their Neighbours, will, now and then, in compliment to their Cattle, cut down a Tree whose Limbs are loaden with the Moss aforementioned. The trouble wou'd be too great to Climb the Tree in order to gather this Provender, but the Shortest way (which in this Country is always counted the best) is to fell it, just like the Lazy Indians, who do the same by such Trees as bear fruit, and so make one Harvest for all. By this bad Husbandry Milk is so Scarce, in the Winter Season, that were a Big-belly'd Woman to long for it, She would lose her Longing. And, in truth, I believe this is often the Case, and at the same time a very good reason why so many People in this Province are markt with a Custard Complexion.

The only Business here is raising of Hogs, which is manag'd with the least Trouble, and affords the Diet they are most fond of. The Truth of it is, the Inhabitants of N Carolina devour so much Swine's flesh, that it fills them full of gross Humours. For want too of a constant Supply of Salt, they are commonly obliged to eat it Fresh, and that begets the highest taint of Scurvy. Thus, whenever a Severe Cold happens to Constitutions thus Vitiated, tis apt to improve into the Yaws, called there very justly the country-Distemper. This has all the Symptoms of the Pox, with this Aggravation, that no Prepara-

tion of Mercury will touch it. First it seizes the Throat, next the Palate, and lastly shews its spite to the poor Nose, of which tis apt in a small time treacherously to undermine the Foundation. 1728
March

This Calamity is so common and familiar here, that it ceases to be a Scandal, and in the disputes that happen about Beauty, the Noses have in some Companies much ado to carry it. Nay, tis said that once, after three good Pork years, a Motion had like to have been made in the House of Burgesses, that a Man with a Nose shou'd be incapable of holding any Place of Profit in the Province; which Extraordinary Motion could never have been intended without Some Hopes of a Majority.

Thus, considering the foul and pernicious Effects of Eating Swine's Flesh in a hot Country, it was wisely forbidden and made an Abomination to the Jews, who liv'd much in the same Latitude with Carolina.

We ordered the Surveyors early to their Business, who were blest with pretty dry Grounds for three Miles together. But they paid dear for it in the next two, consisting of one continued frightfull Pocoson, which no Creatures but those of the amphibious kind ever had ventur'd into before.

This filthy Quagmire did in earnest put the Men's Courage to a Tryal, and tho' I can't say it made them lose their Patience, yet they lost their Humour for Joking. They kept their Gravity like so many Spaniards, so that a Man might then have taken his Opportunity to plunge up to the Chin, without Danger of being laught at. However, this unusual composure of countenance could not fairly be call'd complaining.

Their Day's-Work ended at the Mouth of Northern's Creek, which empties itself into N W River; tho' we chose to Quarter a little higher up the River, near Mossy Point. This we did for the Convenience of an Old house to Shelter our Persons and Baggage from the rain, which threaten'd us hard. We judg'd

1728
March

the thing right, for there fell an heavy shower in the Night, that drove the most hardy of us into the House. Tho' indeed, our case was not much mended by retreating thither, because that Tenement having not long before been us'd as a Pork-Store, the Moisture of the Air dissolv'd the Salt that lay Scatter'd on the Floor, and made it as wet within Doors as without. However, the Swamps and Marshes we were lately accusom'd to had made such Beavers and Otters of us that Nobody caught the least cold.

We had encamp't so early, that we found time in the Evening to walk near half a Mile into the Woods. There we came upon a Family of Mulattoes, that call'd themselves free, tho' by the Shyness of the Master of the House, who took care to keep least in Sight, their Freedom seem'd a little Doubtful. It is certain many Slaves Shelter themselves in this Obscure Part of the World, nor will any of their righteous Neighbours discover them. On the Contrary, they find their Account in Settling such Fugitives on some out-of-the-way-corner of their Land, to raise Stocks for a mean and inconsiderable Share, well knowing their Condition makes it Necessary for them to Submit to any Terms.

Nor were these worthy Borderers content to Shelter Runaway Slaves, but Debtors and Criminals have often met with the like Indulgence. But if the Government of North Carolina has encourag'd this unneighbourly Policy in order to increase their People, it is no more than what Ancient Rome did before them, which was made a City of Refuge for all Debtors and Fugitives, and from that wretched Beginning grew up in time to be Mistress of a great Part of the World. And, considering how Fortune delights in bringing great things out of Small, who knows but Carolina may, one time or other, come to be the Seat of some other great Empire?

12 Every thing had been so soakt with the Rain, that we were

1111

oblig'd to lie by a good Part of the Morning and dry them. ¹⁷²⁸
 However, that time was not lost, because it gave the Surveyors ^{March}
 an opportunity of Platting off their Work, and taking the Course
 of the River. It likewise helpt to recruit the Spirits of the Men,
 who had been a little harass'd with Yesterday's March. Not-
 withstanding all this, we cross'd the River before Noon, and ad-
 vanc'd our Line 3 Miles. It was not possible to make more of
 it, by reason good Part of the way was either Marsh or Pocofon.
 The Line cut two or three Plantations, leaving Part of them in
 Virginia, and part of them in Carolina. This was a Case that
 happen'd frequently, to the great Inconvenience of the Owners,
 who were therefore oblig'd to take out two Patents and Pay for
 a new Survey in each Government. **1681107**

In the Evening we took up our Quarters in Mr. Ballance's
 Pasture, a little above the Bridge built over N W River. There
 we discharg'd the two Periaugas, which in truth had been very
 Servicable in transporting us over the Many Waters in that
 Dirty and Difficult Part of our Business.

Our Landlord had a tolerable good House and Clean Furni-
 ture, and yet we cou'd not be tempted to lodge in it. We
 chose rather to lye in the open Field, for fear of growing too
 tender. A clear Sky, spangled with Stars, was our Canopy,
 which being the last thing we saw before we fell asleep, gave us
 Magnificent Dreams. The Truth of it is, we took so much
 pleasure in that natural kind of Lodging, that I think at the foot
 of the Account Mankind are great Losers by the Luxury of
 Feather-Beds and warm apartments.

The curiosity of beholding so new and withal so Sweet a
 Method of Encamping, brought one of the Senators of N Caro-
 lina to make us a Midnight Visit. But he was so very Clamor-
 ous in his Commendations of it, that the Centinel, not seeing
 his Quality, either thro' his habit or Behaviour, had like to have
 treated him roughly.

1728
March

After excusing the Unseasonableness of his Visit, and letting us know he was a Parliament Man, he swore he was so taken with our Lodging, that he would set Fire to his House as soon as he got Home, and teach his Wife and Children to lie, like us, in the open field.

13 Early this Morning our Chaplain repair'd to us with the Men we had left at Mr. Wilton's. We had sent for them the Evening before to relieve those who had the Labour-Oar from Corotuck-Inlet. But to our great surprise, they petition'd not to be reliev'd, hoping to gain immortal Reputation by being the first of Mankind that Ventur'd thro' the great Dismal. But the rest being equally Ambitious of the same Honour, it was but fair to decide their Pretensions by Lot. After Fortune had declar'd herself, those which she had excluded offer'd Money to the Happy Persons to go in their Stead. But Hercules would have as soon sold the Glory of cleansing the Augean Stables, which was pretty near the same Sort of Work.

No sooner was the Controversy at an end, but we sent them unfortunate Fellows back to their Quarters, whom Chance had Condemn'd to remain upon Firm Land and Sleep in a whole Skin. In the mean while the Surveyors carry'd the Line 3 Miles, which was no Contemptible day's work, considering how cruelly they were entangled with Bryars and Gall Bushes. The Leaf of this last Shrub bespeaks it to be of the Alaternus Family.

Our Work ended within a Quarter of a Mile of the Dismal above-mention'd, where the Ground began to be already full of Sunken Holes and Slashes, which had, here and there, some few Reeds growing in them.

Tis hardly credible how little the Bordering inhabitants were acquainted with this mighty Swamp, notwithstanding they had liv'd their whole lives within Smell of it. Yet, as great Strangers as they were to it, they pretended to be very exact in their Account of its Dimensions, and were positive it could not be

above 7 or 8 Miles wide, but knew no more of the Matter than 1728
Star-gazers know of the Distance of the Fixt Stars. At the Same March
time, they were Simple enough to amuse our Men with Idle
Stories of the Lyons, Panthers and Alligators, they were like to
encounter in that dreadful Place.

In short, we saw plainly there was no Intelligence of this
Terra Incognita to be got, but from our own Experience. For
that Reason it was resolv'd to make the requisite Dispositions to
enter it next Morning. We allotted every one of the Surveyors
for this painful Enterprize, with 12 Men to attend them. Fewer
than that cou'd not be employ'd in clearing the way, carrying
the Chain, marking the Trees, and bearing the necessary Bed-
ding and Provisions. Nor wou'd the Commissioners themselves
have Spared their Persons on this Occasion, but for fear of add-
ing to the poor men's Burthen, while they were certain they
cou'd add nothing to their Resolution.

We quarter'd with our Friend and Fellow Traveller, William
Wilkins, who had been our faithful Pilot to Coratuck, and liv'd
about a mile from the Place where the Line ended. Every
thing lookt so very clean, and the Furniture so neat, that we
were tempted to Lodge within Doors. But the Novelty of
being shut up so close quite spoil'd our rest, nor did we breathe
so free by abundance, as when we lay in the open Air.

Before nine of the Clock this Morning, the Provisions, Bed- 14
ding and other Necessaries, were made up into Packs for the
Men to carry on their Shoulders into the Dismal. They were
victuall'd for 8 days at full Allowance, Nobody doubting but
that wou'd be abundantly Sufficient to carry them thro' that In-
hospitable Place; nor Indeed was it possible for the Poor Fellows
to Stagger under more. As it was, their Loads weigh'd from
60 to 70 Pounds, in just Proportion to the Strength of those
who were to bear them.

T'wou'd have been unconscionable to have Saddled them with

1728
March

Burthens heavier than that, when they were to lugg them thro' a filthy Bogg, which was hardly practicable with no Burthen at all.

Besides this Luggage at their Backs, they were oblig'd to measure the distance, mark the Trees, and clear the way for the Surveyors every Step they went. It was really a Pleasure to see with how much Cheerfulness they undertook, and with how much Spirit they went thro' all this Drudgery. For their Greater Safety, the Commissioners took care to furnish them with Peruvian-Bark, Rhubarb and Hipocoacanah, in case they might happen, in that wet Journey, to be taken with fevers or Fluxes.

Altho' there was no need of Example to inflame Persons already so cheerful, yet to enter the People with the better grace, the Author and two more of the Commissioners accompanied them half a Mile into the Dismal. The Skirts of it were thinly Planted with Dwarf Reeds and Gall-Bushes, but when we got into the Dismal itself, we found the Reeds grew there much taller and closer, and, to mend the matter was so interlac'd with bamboe-briars, that there was no scuffling thro' them without the help of Pioneers. At the same time, we found the Ground moist and trembling under our feet like a Quagmire, insomuch that it was an easy Matter to run a Ten-Foot-Pole up to the Head in it, without exerting any uncommon Strength to do it.

Two of the Men, whose Burthens were the least cumbersome, had orders to march before, with their Tomahawks, and clear the way, in order to make an Opening for the Surveyors. By their Assistance we made a Shift to push the Line half a Mile in 3 Hours, and then reacht a small piece of firm Land, about 100 Yards wide, Standing up above the rest like an Island. Here the people were glad to lay down their Loads and take a little refreshment, while the happy man, whose lot it was to carry the

Jugg of Rum, began already, like Æsop's Bread-Carriers, to find it grow a good deal lighter. 1728
March

After reposing about an Hour, the Commissioners recommended Vigour and Constancy to their Fellow-Travellers, by whom they were answer'd with 3 Cheerful Huzzas, in Token of Obedience. This Ceremony was no sooner over but they took up their Burthens and attended the Motion of the Surveyors, who, tho' they workt with all their might, could reach but one Mile farther, the same obstacles still attending them which they had met with in the Morning.

However small this distance may seem to such as are us'd to travel at their Ease, yet our Poor Men, who were oblig'd to work with an unwieldy Load at their Backs, had reason to think it a long way; Especially in a Bogg where they had no firm Footing, but every Step made a deep Impression, which was instantly fill'd with Water. At the same time they were labouring with their Hands to cut down the Reeds, which were Ten-feet high, their Legs were hampered with the Bryars. Besides, the Weather happen'd to be warm, and the tallness of the Reeds kept off every Friendly Breeze from coming to refresh them. And, indeed, it was a little provoking to hear the Wind whistling among the Branches of the White Cedars, which grew here and there amongst the Reeds, and at the same time not have the Comfort to feel the least Breath of it.

In the mean time the 3 Commissioners return'd out of the Dismal the same way they went in, and, having join'd their Brethren, proceeded that Night as far as Mr. Wilson's.

This worthy Person lives within sight of the Dismal, in the Skirts whereof his Stocks range and Maintain themselves all the Winter, and yet he knew as little of it as he did of Terra Australis Incognita. He told us a Canterbury Tale of a North Briton, whose Curiosity Spurr'd him a long way into this great Defart, as he call'd it, near 20 Years ago, but he having no

1728 *March* Compass, nor seeing the Sun for several Days Together, wander'd about till he was almost famisht; but at last he bethought himself of a Secret his Countrymen make use of to Pilot themselves in a Dark day.

He took a fat Loufe out of his Collar, and expos'd it to the open day on a Piece of White Paper, which he brought along with him for his Journal. The poor Insect having no Eye-lids, turn'd himself about till he found the Darkest Part of the Heavens, and so made the best of his way towards the North. By this Direction he Steer'd himself Safe out, and gave such a frightful account of the Monsters he saw, and the Distresses he underwent, that no mortall Since has been hardy enough to go upon the like dangerous Discovery.

15 The Surveyors pursued their work with all Diligence, but Still found the Soil of the Dismal so Spongy that the Water ouzed up into every footstep they took. To their Sorrow, too, they found the Reeds and Bryars more firmly interwoven than than they did the day before. But the greatest Grievance was from large Cypresses, which the Wind had blown down and heap'd upon one another. On the Limbs of most of them grew Sharp Snags, Pointing every way like so many Pikes, that requir'd much Pains and Caution to avoid.

These Trees being Evergreens, and Shooting their Large Tops Very high, are easily overset by every Gust of Wind, because there is no firm Earth to Steddy their Roots. Thus many of them were laid prostrate to the great Encumbrance of the way. Such Variety of Difficulties made the Business go on heavily, insomuch that, from Morning till Night, the Line could advance no farther than 1 mile and 31 Poles. Never was Rum, that cordial of Life, found more necessary than it was in this Dirty Place. It did not only recruit the People's Spirits, now almost Jaded with Fatigue, but serv'd to correct the Badness of the Water, and at the same time to resist the Malignity of the

Air. Whenever the Men wanted to drink, which was very often, they had nothing more to do but to make a Hole, and the Water bubbled up in a Moment. But it was far from being either clear or well tasted, and had besides a Physical Effect, from the Tincture it receiv'd from the Roots of the Shrubbs and Trees that grew in the Neighbourhood. 1728
March

While the Surveyors were thus painfully employ'd, the Commissioners discharg'd the long Score they had with Mr. Wilson, for the Men and Horses which had been quarter'd upon him during our Expedition to Coratuck. From thence we march'd in good Order along the East Side of the Dismal, and pass'd the long Bridge that lies over the South Branch of Elizabeth River. At the End of 18 Miles we reacht Timothy Ivy's Plantation, where we pitcht our Tent for the first Time, and were furnisht with every thing the Place afforded.

We perceiv'd the happy Effects of Industry in this Family, in which every one lookt tidy and clean, and carri'd in their countenances the chearful Marks of Plenty. We saw no Drones there, which are but too Common, alas, in that Part of the World. Tho', in truth, the Distemper of Laziness seizes the Men oftener much than the Women. These last Spin, weave and knit, all with their own Hands, while their Husbands, depending on the Bounty of the Climate, are Sloathfull in every thing but getting of Children, and in that only Instance make themselves useful Members of an Infant-Colony.

There is but little Wool in that Province, tho' Cotton grows very kindly, and, so far South, is Seldom nippt by the Frost. The Good Women mix this with their Wool for their outer Garments; tho', for want of Fulling, that kind of Manufacture is Open and Sleazy. Flax likewise thrives there extreamly, being perhaps as fine as any in the World, and I question not might, with a little care, and pains, be brought to rival that of

1728 Egypt; and yet the Men are here so intolerable Lazy, they seldom take the trouble to propagate it.

March
16 The Line was this day carry'd one Mile and half and 16 Poles. The Soil continued soft and Miry, but fuller of Trees, especially White cedars. Many of these too were thrown down and piled in Heaps, high enough for a good Muscovite Fortification. The worst of it was, the Poor Fellows began now to be troubled with Fluxes, occasion'd by bad Water and moist Lodging: but chewing of Rhubarb kept that Malady within Bounds.

In the mean time the Commissioners decamp't early in the Morning, and made a March of 25 Miles, as far as Mr. Andrew Mead's, who lives upon Nansimand River. They were no sooner got under the Shelter of that Hospitable Roof, but it began to rain hard, and continued so to do great part of the Night. This gave them much Pain for their Friends in the Dismal, whose sufferings spoilt their Taste for the good Chear, wherewith they were entertain'd themselves.

However, late that Evening, these poor Men had the Fortune to come upon another Terra-firma, which was the Luckyer for them, because the Lower ground, by the rain that fell, was made a fitter Lodging for Tadpoles than men.

In our Journey we remarkt that the North Side of this great Swamp lies higher than either the East or the West, nor were the approaches to it so full of Sunken Grounds. We pass't by no less than two Quaker Meeting Houses, one of which had an Awkward Ornament on the West End of it, that seem'd to Ape a Steeple. I must own I expected no such Piece of Foppery from a Sect of so much outside Simplicity.

That perswasion prevails much in the lower end of Nansimond county, for want of Ministers to Pilot the People a decenter way to Heaven.

The ill Reputation of Tobacco planted in those lower Parishes makes the Clergy unwilling to accept of them, unless it be such

whose abilities are as mean as their Pay. Thus, whether the Churches be quite void or but indifferently filled, the Quakers will have an Opportunity of gaining Profelytes. Tis a wonder no Popish Missionaries are sent from Maryland to labour in this Neglected Vineyard, who we know have Zeal enough to traverse Sea and Land on the Meritorious Errand of making converts. 1728
March

Nor is it less Strange that some Wolf in Sheep's cloathing arrives not from New England to lead astray a Flock that has no shepherd. People uninstructed in any Religion are ready to embrace the first that offers. Tis natural for helpless man to adore his Maker in Some Form or other, and were there any exception to this Rule, I should suspect it to be among the Hottentots of the Cape of Good-Hope and of North Carolina.

There fell a great deal of Rain in the Night, accompany'd with a Strong Wind. The fellow-feeling we had for the poor Dismalites, on Account of this unkind Weather, render'd the Down we laid upon uneasy. We fancy'd them half-drown'd in their Wet Lodging, with the Trees blowing down about their Ears. These Were the Gloomy Images our Fears Suggested; tho' twas so much uneasiness clear gain. They happen'd to come of much better, by being luckily encampt on the dry piece of Ground afore-mention'd.

They were, however, forc'd to keep the Sabbath in Spite of 17 their Teeth, contrary to the Dispensation our good Chaplain had given them. Indeed, their Short allowance of Provision would have justify'd their making the best of their way, without Distinction of days. Twas certainly a Work both of Necessity and Self-preservation, to save themselves from Starving. Nevertheless, the hard Rain had made every thing so thoroughly wet, that it was quite impossible to do any Business. They therefore made a virtue of what they could not help, and contentedly rested in their dry Situation.

1728
March

Since the Surveyors had enter'd the D'sinal, they had laid Eyes on no living Creature : neither Bird nor Beast, Insect nor Reptile came in View. Doubtless, the Eternal Shade that broods over this mighty Bog, and hinders the sun-beams from blessing the Ground, makes it an uncomfortable Habitation for any thing that has life. Not so much as a Zealand Frog cou'd endure so Aguish a Situation.

It had one Beauty, however, that delighted the Eye, tho' at the Expence of all the other Senses: the Moisture of the Soil preserves a continual Verdure, and makes every Plant an Evergreen, but at the same time the foul Damps ascend without ceasing, corrupt the Air, and render it unfit for Respiration. Not even a Turkey-Buzzard will venture to fly over it, no more than the Italian Vultures will over the filthy Lake Avernus, or the Birds in the Holy-Land over the Salt Sea, where Sodom and Gomorrah formerly stood.

In these sad Circumstances, the kindest thing we cou'd do for our Suffering Friends was to give them a place in the Litany. Our Chaplain, for his Part, did his Office, and rubb'd us up with a Seasonable Sermon. This was quite a new thing to our Brethren of North Carolina, who live in a climate where no clergyman can Breathe, any more than Spiders in Ireland.

For want of men in Holy Orders, both the Members of the Council and Justices of the Peace are empower'd by the Laws of that Country to marry all those who will not take One another's Word; but for the ceremony of Christening their children, they trust that to chance. If a Parson come in their way, they will crave a Cast of his office, as they call it, else they are content their Offspring should remain as Arrant Pagans as themselves. They account it among their greatest advantages that they are not Priest-ridden, not remembering that the Clergy is rarely guilty of Bestriding such as have the misfortune to be poor.

One thing may be said for the Inhabitants of that Province,

that they are not troubled with any Religious Fumes, and have the least Superstition of any People living. They do not know Sunday from any other day, any more than Robinson Crusoe did, which would give them a great Advantage were they given to be industrious. But they keep so many Sabbaths every week, that their disregard of the Seventh Day has no manner of cruelty in it, either to Servants or Cattle. 1728
March

It was with some difficulty we cou'd make our People quit the good cheer they met with at this House, so it was late before we took our Departure; but to make us amends, our Landlord was so good as to conduct us Ten Miles on our Way, as far as the Cypress Swamp, which drains itself into the Dismal. Eight Miles beyond that we forded the Waters of Coropeak, which tend the same way as do many others on that side. In Six Miles more we reacht the Plantation of Mr. Thomas Spight, a Grandee of N Carolina. We found the good Man upon his Crutches, being crippled with the Gout in both his Knees. Here we flatter'd ourselves we should by this time meet with good Tydings of the Surveyors, but had reckon'd, alas! without our Host: on the Contrary, we were told the Dismal was at least Thirty Miles wide in that Place. However, as nobody could say this on his own Knowledge, we Order'd Guns to be fired and a Drum to be beaten, but receiv'd no Answer, unless it was from that prating Nymph Echo, who, like a loquacious Wife, will always have the last Word, and Sometimes return three for one.

It was indeed no Wonder our Signal was not heard at that time, by the People in the Dismal, because, in Truth, they had not then penetrated one Third of their way. They had that Morning fallen to work with great Vigour; and, finding the Ground better than Ordinary, drove on the Line 2 Miles and 38 poles. This was reckon'd an Herculean day's Work, and yet they would not have Stopp'd there, had not an impenetrable

1728
March
cedar Thicket checkt their Industry. Our Landlord had seated Himself on the Borders of this Disinal, for the Advantage of the Green Food His Cattle find there all Winter, and for the Rooting that Supports His Hogs. This, I own, is some convenience to his Purse, for which his whole Family pay dear in their Persons, for they are devoured by musketas all the Summer, and have Agues every Spring and Fall, which Corrupt all the Juices of their Bodies, give them a cadaverous complexion, and besides a lazy, creeping Habit, which they never get rid of.

19 We Ordered Several Men to Patrole on the Edge of the Disinal, both towards the North and towards the South, and to fire Guns at proper Distances. This they perform'd very punctually, but cou'd hear nothing in return, nor gain any Sort of Intelligence. In the mean time whole Flocks of Women and Children flew hither to Stare at us, with as much curiosity as if we had lately Landed from Bantam or Morocco.

Some Borderers, too, had a great Mind to know where the Line wou'd come out, being for the most part Apprehensive lest their Lands Should be taken into Virginia. In that case they must have submitted to some Sort of Order and Government; whereas, in N Carolina, every One does what seems best in his own Eyes. There were some good Women that brought their children to be Baptiz'd, but brought no Capons along with them to make the solemnity cheerful. In the mean time it was Strange that none came to be marry'd in such a Multitude, if it had only been for the Novelty of having their Hands Joyn'd by one in Holy Orders. Yet so it was, that tho' our chaplain Christen'd above an Hundred, he did not marry so much as one Couple dureing the whole Expedition. But marriage is reckon'd a Lay contract in Carolina, as I said before, and a Country Justice can tie the fatal Knot there, as fast as an Arch-Bishop.

None of our Visitors could, however, tell us any News of the

Surveyors, nor Indeed was it possible any of them shou'd at that time, They being still laboring in the Midst of the Disfmal. 1728
March

It seems they were able to carry the Line this Day no further than one mile and 61 Poles, and that whole distance was thro' a Miry cedar Bogg, where the ground trembled under their Feet most frightfully. In many places too their Passage was retarded by a great number of fallen Trees, that lay Horfing upon one Another.

Tho' many circumstances concurr'd to make this an unwholesome Situation, yet the Poor men had no time to be sick, nor can one conceive a more Calamitous Cafe than it would have been to be laid up in that uncomfortable Quagmire. Never were Patients more tractable, or willing to take Physick, than these honest Fellows; but it was from a Dread of laying their Bones in a Bogg that wou'd soon spew them up again. That Consideration also put them upon more caution about their Lodging.

They first cover'd the Ground with Square Pieces of Cypress bark, which now, in the Spring, they cou'd easily Slip off the Tree for that purpose. On this they Spread their Bedding; but unhappily the Weight and Warmth of their Bodies made the Water rise up betwixt the Joints of the Bark, to their great Inconvenience. Thus they lay not only moist, but also exceedingly cold, because their Fires were continually going out. For no sooner was the Trash upon the Surface burnt away, but immediately the Fire was extinguish'd by the Moisture of the Soil, Infomuch that it was great part of the Centinel's Business to rekindle it again in a Fresh Place, every Quarter of an Hour. Nor cou'd they indeed do their duty better, because Cold was the only Enemy they had to Guard against in a miserable Morass, where nothing can inhabit.

We could get no Tidings yet of our Brave Adventurers, notwithstanding we despatcht men to the likeliest Stations to en-

1728
March

quire after them. They were still Scuffling in the Mire, and could not Possibly forward the Line this whole day more than one Mile and 64 Chains. Every Step of this Day's Work was thro' a cedar Bog, where the Trees were somewhat Smaller and grew more into a Thicket. It was now a great Misfortune to the Men to find their Provisions grow less as their Labour grew greater; They were all forc'd to come to short Allowance, and consequently to work hard without filling their Bellies. Tho' this was very severe upon English Stomachs, yet the People were so far from being discomfited at it, that they still kept up their good Humour, and merrily told a young Fellow in the Company, who lookt very Plump and Wholesome, that he must expect to go first to Pot, if matters shou'd come to Extremity.

This was only said by way of Jest, yet it made Him thoughtful in earnest. However, for the Present he return'd them a very civil answer, letting them know that, dead or alive, he shou'd be glad to be useful to such worthy good Friends. But, after all, this Humorous Saying had one very good Effect, for that younker, who before was a little enclin'd by his Constitution to be lazy, grew on a Sudden Extreemly Industrious, that so there might be less Occasion to carbonade him for the good of his Fellow-Travellers.

While our Friends were thus embarrass'd in the Dismal, the Commissioners began to ly under great uneasiness for them. They knew very well their Provisions must by this time begin to fall Short, nor cou'd they conceive any likely means of a Supply. At this time of the Year both the Cattle and Hoggs had forsaken the Skirts of the Dismal, invited by the Springing Grasse on the firm Land. All our hopes were that Providence wou'd cause some Wild Game to fall in their way, or else direct them to a wholesome Vegetable for Subsistence. In Short they were haunted with so many Frights on this Occasion, that they

were in truth more uneasy than the Persons whose Case they lamented. 1728
March

We had several Visitors from Edenton, in the Afternoon, that came with Mr. Gale, who had prudently left us at Corotuck, to Scuffle thro' that dirty Country by our Selves. These Gentlemen, having good Noses, had smelt out, at 30 Miles' Distance, the Precious Liquor, with which the Liberality of our good Friend Mr. Mead had just before Supply'd us. That generous Person had judg'd very right, that we were now got out of the Latitude of Drink proper for men in Affliction, and therefore was so good as to send his Cart loaden with all sorts of refreshments, for which the Commissioners return'd Him their Thanks, and the Chaplain His Blessing.

The Surveyors and their Attendants began now in good Earnest to be alarm'd with Apprehensions of Famine, nor could they forbear looking with Some Sort of Appetite upon a dog that had been the faithful Companion of their Travels.

Their Provisions were now near exhausted. They had this Morning made the last Distribution, that so each might Husband his small Pittance as he pleas'd. Now it was that the fresh Colour'd Young Man began to tremble every Joint of Him, having dreamed, the Night before, that the Indians were about to Barbecue him over live coals.

The Prospect of Famine determin'd the People, at last, with one consent, to abandon the Line for the Present, which advanced but slowly, and make the best of their way to firm Land. Accordingly they sat off very early, and, by the help of the Compass which they carried along with them, Steer'd a direct Westwardly Course. They marcht from Morning till Night, and Computed their Journey to amount to about 4 Miles, which was a great way, considering the difficulties of the Ground. It was all along a Cedar-Swamp, so dirty and perplext, that if they

1728 had not travell'd for their Lives, they cou'd not have reacht so
March far.

On their way they espied a Turkey-Buzzard, that flew prodigiously high to get above the Noisome Exhalations that ascend from that filthy place.¹ This they were willing to understand as a good Omen, according to the Superstition of the Ancients, who had great Faith in the Flight of Vultures. However, after all this tedious Journey, they could yet discover no End of their toil, which made them very pensive, especially after they had eat the last Morfel of their Provisions. But to their unspeakable comfort, when all was hush't in the Evening, they heard the Cattle low, and the Dogs bark, very distinctly, which, to Men in that distress, was more delightful Music than Faustina or Farinelli cou'd have made. In the mean time the Commissioners could get no News of them from any of their Visitors, who Assembled from every Point of the Compafs.

But the good Landlord had Visitors of another kind while we were there, that is to say, some industrious Masters of Ships, that lay in Nanfmond River. These worthy Commanders came to bespeak Tobacco from these Parts to make up their Loadings, in Contempt of the Virginia Law, which Positively forbad their taking in any made in North Carolina. Nor was this Restraint at all unreasonable; because they have no Law in Carolina, either to mend the Quality or lessen the quantity of Tobacco, or so much as to prevent the turning out of Seconds, all which cases have been provided against by the Laws of Virginia.² Wherefore, there can be no reason why the Inhabitants of that Province Shou'd have the same Advantage of Shipping their Tobacco in our Parts, when they will by no means submit to the same Restrictions that we do.

22 Our Patrole happen'd not to go far enough to the Northward

¹ Buzzards cannot smell.

² See Jones's *Virginia*, 1724, and Henning's *Statutes*.

this Morning, if they had, the People in the Dismal might have heard the Report of their Guns. For this Reason they return'd without any Tydings, which threw us into a great tho' unnecessary Perplexity. This was now the Ninth day since they enter'd into that inhospitable Swamp, and consequently we had reason to believe their Provisions were quite Spent. 1728
March

We knew they workt hard, and therefore would eat heartily, so long as they had wherewithal to recruit their Spirits, not imagining the Swamp so wide as they found it. Had we been able to guess where the Line wou'd come out, we wou'd have sent men to meet them with a fresh Supply ; but as we cou'd know nothing of that, and as we had neither Compass nor Surveyor to guide a Messenger on such an Errand, we were unwilling to expose him to no Purpose ; Therefore, all we were able to do for them, in so great an Extremity, was to recommend them to a Merciful Providence.

However long we might think the time, yet we were cautious of Shewing our uneasiness, for fear of Mortifying our Landlord. He had Done his best for us, and therefore we were unwilling he should think us dissatisfy'd with our Entertainment. In the midst of our concern, we were most agreeably surpriz'd, just after Dinner, with the News that the Dismalites were all Safe. These blessed Tidings were brought to us by Mr. Swan, the Carolina-Surveyor, who came to us in a very tatter'd condition.

After very Short Salutations, we got about Him as if He had been a Hottentot, and began to Inquire into his Adventures. He gave us a Detail of their uncomfortable Voyage thro' the Dismal, and told us, particularly, they had pursued their Journey early that Morning, encouraged by the good Omen of seeing the Crows fly over their Heads ; that, after an Hour's march over very Rotten Ground, they, on a Sudden, began to find themselves among tall Pines, that grew in the Water, which in many Places was Knee-deep. This Pine Swamp, into which that of

1728
March

Coropeak drain'd itself, extended near a Mile in Breadth ; and tho' it was exceedingly wet, yet it was much harder at Bottom than the rest of the Swamp ; that about Ten in the Morning, they recovered firm Land, which they embraced with as much Pleasure as Shipwreckt Wretches do the shoar.

After these honest adventurers had congratulated each other's Deliverance, their first Inquiry was for a good House, where they might Satisfy the Importunity of their Stomachs. Their good Genius directed them to Mr. Brinkley's, who dwells a little to the Southward of the Line. This Man began immediately to be very inquisitive, but they declar'd they had no Spirits to answer Questions till after Dinner.

"But pray, Gentlemen," said he, "answer me One Question at least : what shall we get for your Dinner?" To which they replied, "No Matter what, provided it be but Enough." He kindly supply'd their Wants as soon as possible, and by the Strength of that Refreshment they made a Shift to come to us in the Evening, to tell their own Story. They all lookt very thin, and as ragged as the Gibeonite Ambassadors did in the days of Yore. Our Surveyors told us they had measur'd Ten Miles in the Dismal, and Computed the Distance they had Marcht since to amount to about five more, So they made the whole Breadth to be 15 Miles in all.

23 It was very reasonable that the Surveyors, and the men who had been Sharers in their Fatigue, should now have a little Rest. They were all, except one, in good Health and good heart, blessed be God ! notwithstanding the dreadful Hardships they had gone through. It was really a Pleasure to see the Chearfulness wherewith they receiv'd the Order to prepare to re-enter the Dismal on the Monday following, in order to continue the Line from the place where they had left off measuring, that so we might have the Exact Breadth of that Dirty Place. There were no more than two of them that cou'd be perswaded to be

reliev'd on this Occasion, or Suffer the other men to Share the Credit of that bold Undertaking, Neither wou'd these have Suffer'd it had not one of them been very lame, and the Other much Indispos'd. 1728
March

By the Description the Surveyors gave of the Dismal, we were convinc'd that nothing but the Exceeding dry Season we had been blest'd with cou'd have made the passing of it practicable. It is the Source of no less than five Several Rivers which discharge themselves Southward into Albermarle Sound, and of two that run northerly into Virginia. From thence tis easy to imagine that the Soil must be thoroughly Soakt with Water, or else there must be plentiful Stores of it under Ground; to supply so many Rivers; especially since there is no Lake, or any considerable Body of that Element to be seen on the Surface.¹ The Rivers that Head in it from Virginia are the South Branch of Nanfimon, and the West Branch of Elizabeth; and those from Carolina are North-west River, North River, Pasquetank, Little River, and Pequimons.

There is one remarkable part of the Dismal, lying to the south of the Line, that has few or no Trees growing on it, but contains a large Tract of tall Reeds. These being green all the Year round, and waving with every Wind, have procur'd it the Name of the Green Sea.

We are not yet acquainted with the precise Extent of the Dismal, the whole haveing never been Survey'd; but it may be Computed at a Medium to be about 30 Miles long and 10 Miles broad, tho' where the line crost it, twas compleatly 15 Miles wide. But it seems to grow Narrower towards the North, or at least does so in many Places. The Exhalations that continually rise from this vast Body of mire and Nastiness infect the Air for many Miles round, and render it very unwholesome for the

¹ Lake Drummond.

1728
March { Bordering Inhabitants. It makes them liable to Agues, Pleurifies, and many other Distempers, that kill abundance of People, and make the rest look no better than Ghosts. It wou'd require a great Sum of Money to drain it, but the Publick Treasure cou'd not be better bestow'd, than to preserve the Lives of his Majesty's Liege People, and at the same time render so great a Tract of swamp very Profitable, besides the advantage of making a Channel to transport by water-carriage goods from Albermarle Sound into Nanfimond and Elizabeth Rivers, in Virginia.

24 This being Sunday, we had a Numerous congregation, which flockt to our Quarters from all the adjacent Country. The News that our Surveyors were come out of the Dismal, increas'd the Number very much, because it wou'd give them an Opportunity of guesling, at least, whereabouts the Line wou'd cut, whereby they might form Some Judgment whether they belong'd to Virginia or Carolina. Those who had taken up Land within the Disputed Bounds were in great pain lest it should be found to ly in Virginia; because this being done contrary to an Expreß Order of that government, the Patentees had great reason to fear they should in that case have lost their land. But their Apprehensions were now at an end, when they understood that all the Territory which had been controverted was like to be left in Carolina.

In the afternoon, those who were to re-enter the Dismal were furnisht with the Necessary Provisions, and Order'd to repair the Over-Night to their Landlord, Peter Brinkley's, that they might be ready to begin their Business early on Monday Morning. Mr. Irvin was excus'd from the Fatigue, in complement to his Lungs; but Mr. Mayo and Mr. Swan were Robust enough to return upon that painful Service, and, to do them Justice, they went with great Alacrity. The Truth was, they now

knew the worst of it; and cou'd guess pretty near at the time when they might hope to return to Land again. 1729.¹
March

The Air was chill'd this Morning with a Smart North-west Wind, which favour'd the Disfinalites in their Dirty March. They return'd by the Path they had made in coming out, and with great Industry arriv'd in the Evening at the Spot where the Line had been discontinued. 25

After so long and laborious a Journey, they were glad to repose themselves on their couches of Cypress-bark, where their sleep was as sweet as it wou'd have been on a Bed of Finland Down.

In the mean time, we who stay'd behind had nothing to do, but to make the best observations we cou'd upon that Part of the Country. The Soil of our Landlord's Plantation, tho' none of the best, seem'd more fertile than any thereabouts, where the Ground is near as Sandy as the Defarts of Affrica, and consequently barren. The Road leading from thence to Edenton, being in distance about 27 Miles, lies upon a Ridge call'd Sandy-Ridge, which is so wretchedly Poor that it will not bring Potatoes.

The Pines in this Part of the country are of a different Species from those that grow in Virginia: their bearded Leaves are much longer and their Cones much larger.² Each Cell contains a Seed of the Size and Figure of a black-ey'd Pea, which, Shedding in November, is very good Mast for Hogs, and fattens them in a Short time.

The Smallest of these Pines are full of Cones, which are 8 or 9 Inches long, and each affords commonly 60 or 70 Seeds. This Kind of Mast has the Advantage of all other, by being more constant, and less liable to be nippt by the Frost, or Eaten

¹ 1729 in manuscript.

² See Cones.

1729
March

by the Caterpillars. The Trees also abound more with Turpentine, and consequently yield more Tarr, than either the Yellow or the White Pine; And for the same reason make more durable Timber for building. The Inhabitants hereabouts pick up Knots of Lightwood in Abundance, which they burn into tar, and then carry it to Norfolk or Nansimond for a Market. The Tar made in this method is the less Valuable, because it is said to burn the Cordage, tho' it is full as good for all other uses, as that made in Sweden and Muscovy.

Surely there is no place in the World where the Inhabitants live with less Labour than in N Carolina. It approaches nearer to the Description of Lubberland than any other, by the great felicity of the Climate, the easiness of raising Provisions, and the Slothfulness of the People.

Indian Corn is of so great increase, that a little Pains will Subsist a very large Family with Bread, and then they may have meat without any pains at all, by the Help of the Low Grounds, and the great Variety of Mast that grows on the High-land. The Men, for their Parts, just like the Indians, impose all the Work upon the poor Women. They make their Wives rise out of their Beds early in the Morning, at the same time that they lye and Snore, till the Sun has run one third of his course, and disperst all the unwholesome Damps. Then, after Stretching and Yawning for half an Hour, they light their Pipes, and, under the Protection of a cloud of Smoak, venture out into the open Air; tho', if it happens to be never so little cold, they quickly return Shivering into the Chimney corner. When the Weather is mild, they stand leaning with both their arms upon the corn-field fence, and gravely consider whether they had best go and take a Small Heat at the Hough: but generally find reasons to put it off till another time.

Thus they loiter away their Lives, like Solomon's Sluggard,

with their Arms across, and at the Winding up of the Year 1729
Scarcely have Bread to Eat. March

To speak the Truth, tis a thorough Aversion to Labor that makes People file off to N Carolina, where Plenty and a Warm Sun confirm them in their Disposition to Laziness for their whole Lives.

Since we were like to be confin'd to this place, till the People 26
return'd out of the Dismal, twas agreed that our Chaplain might
Safely take a turn to Edenton, to preach the Gospel to the Infidels
there, and Christen their Children. He was accompany'd thither
by Mr. Little, One of the Carolina Commissioners, who, to
shew his regard for the Church, offer'd to treat Him on the
Road with a Fricassee of Rum. They fry'd half a Dozen
Rashers of very fat Bacon in a Pint of Rum, both which being
disht up together, serv'd the Company at once both for meat
and Drink.

Most of the Rum they get in this Country comes from New
England, and is so bad and unwholesome, that it is not improp-
erly call'd "Kill-Devil." It is distill'd there from foreign
molosses,¹ which, if Skilfully manag'd, yields near Gallon for
Gallon. Their molosses comes from the same country, and has
the name of "Long Sugar" in Carolina, I suppose from the
Ropiness of it, and Serves all the purposes of Sugar, both in their
Eating and Drinking.

When they entertain their Friends bountifully, they fail not
to set before them a Capacious Bowl of Bombo, so call'd from
the Admiral of that name. This is a Compound of Rum and
Water in Equal Parts, made palatable with the said long Sugar.
As good Humour begins to flow, and the Bowl to Ebb, they
take Care to replenish it with Shear Rum, of which there always
is a Reserve under the Table. But such Generous doings

¹ The spelling of the time. *Jones.*

1729
March happen only when that Balsam of life is plenty; for they have often such Melancholy times, that neither Land-graves nor Cassicks can procure one drop for their Wives, when they ly in, or are troubled with the Colick or Vapours. Very few in this Country have the Industry to plant Orchards, which, in a Dearth of Rum, might supply them with much better Liquor.

The Truth is, there is one Inconvenience that easily discourages lazy People from making This improvement: very often, in Autumn, when the Apples begin to ripen, they are visited with Numerous Flights of paraqueets, that bite all the Fruit to Pieces in a moment, for the sake of the Kernels. The Havock they make is Sometimes so great, that whole Orchards are laid waste in Spite of all the Noises that can be made, or Mawkins that can be drest up, to fright 'em away. These Ravenous Birds visit North Carolina only during the warm Season, and so soon as the Cold begins to come on, retire back towards the Sun. They rarely Venture so far North as Virginia, except in a very hot Summer, when they visit the most Southern Parts of it. They are very Beautiful; but like some other pretty Creatures, are apt to be loud and mischievous.

27 Betwixt this and Edenton there are many thuckleberry Slashes, which afford a convenient Harbour for Wolves and Foxes. The first of these wild Beasts is not so large and fierce as they are in other countries more Northerly. He will not attack a Man in the keenest of his Hunger, but run away from him, as from an Animal more mischievous than himself.

The Foxes are much bolder, and will Sometimes not only make a Stand, but likewise assault any one that would balk them of their Prey. The Inhabitants hereabouts take the trouble to dig abundance of Wolf-Pits, so deep and perpendicular, that when a Wolf is once tempted into them, he can no more Scramble out again, than a Husband who has taken the Leap can Scramble out of Matrimony.

1729
March

Most of the Houses in this Part of the Country are Log-houses, covered with Pine or Cypress Shingles, 3 feet long, and one broad. They are hung upon Laths with Peggs, and their doors too turn upon Wooden Hinges, and have wooden Locks to Secure them, so that the Building is finisht without Nails or other Iron-Work. They also set up their Pales without any Nails at all, and indeed more Securely than those that are nail'd. There are 3 Rails mortised into the Posts, the lowest of which serves as a Sill with a Groove in the Middle, big enough to receive the End of the Pales: the middle Part of the Pale rests against the Inside of the Next Rail, and the Top of it is brought forward to the outside of the uppermost. Such Wreathing of the Pales in and out makes them stand firm, and much harder to unfix than when nail'd in the Ordinary way.

Within 3 or 4 Miles of Edenton, the Soil appears to be a little more fertile, tho' it is much cut with Slashes, which seem all to have a tendency towards the Dismal.

This Town is Situate on the North side of Albermarle Sound, which is there about 5 miles over. A Dirty Slash runs all along the Back of it, which in the Summer is a foul annoyance, and furnishes abundance of that Carolina plague, musquetas. There may be 40 or 50 Houses, most of them Small, and built without Expense. A Citizen here is counted Extravagant, if he has Ambition enough to aspire to a Brick-chimney. Justice herself is but indifferently Lodged, the Court-House having much the Air of a Common Tobacco-House. I believe this is the only Metropolis in the Christian or Mahometan World, where there is neither Church, Chappel, Mosque, Synagogue, or any other Place of Publick Worship of any Sect or Religion whatsoever.

What little Devotion there may happen to be is much more private than their vices. The People seem easy without a Minister, as long as they are exempted from paying Him. Some-

1729
March

times the Society for propagating the Gospel has had the Charity to send over Missionaries to this Country; but unfortunately the Priest has been too Lewd for the people, or, which oftener happens, they too lewd for the Priest. For these Reasons these Reverend Gentlemen have always left their Flocks as arrant Heathen as they found them. Thus much however may be said for the Inhabitants of Edenton, that not a Soul has the least taint of Hypocrisy, or Superstition, acting very Frankly and above-board in all their Excesses.

Provisions here are extremely cheap, and extremely good, so that People may live plentifully at a trifling expense. Nothing is dear but Law, Physick, and Strong Drink, which are all bad in their Kind, and the last they get with so much Difficulty, that they are never guilty of the Sin of Suffering it to Sour upon their Hands. Their Vanity generally lies not so much in having a handsome Dining-Room, as a Handsome House of Office: in this Kind of Structure they are really extravagant.

They are rarely guilty of Flattering or making any Court to their governors, but treat them with all the Excesses of Freedom and Familiarity. They are of Opinion their rulers wou'd be apt to grow insolent, if they grew Rich, and for that reason take care to keep them poorer, and more dependent, if possible, than the Saints in New England used to do their Governors. They have very little coin, so they are forced to carry on their Home-Traffick with Paper-Money. This is the only Cash that will tarry in the Country, and for that reason the Discount goes on increasing between that and real Money, and will do so to the End of the Chapter.

- 28 Our Time pass'd heavily in our Quarters, where we were quite cloy'd with the Carolina Felicity of having nothing to do. It was really more insupportable than the greatest Fatigue, and made us even envy the Drudgery of our Friends in the Dismal. Besides, tho' the Men we had with us were kept in Exact Dif-

cipline, and behav'd without Reproach, yet our Landlord began to be tired of them, fearing they would breed a Famine in his Family. 1729
March

Indeed, so many keen Stomachs made great Havock amongst the Beef and Bacon, which he had laid in for his Summer Provision, nor cou'd he easily purchase More at that time of the Year, with the Money we paid him, because the People having no certain Market seldom provide any more of these Commodities than will barely supply their own Occasions. Besides the Weather was now grown too warm to lay in a fresh Stock so late in the Spring. These Considerations abated somewhat of that chearfulness with which he bidd us Welcome in the Beginning, and made him think the time quite as long as we did till the Surveyors return'd.

While we were thus all Hands uneasy, we were comforted with the News that this Afternoon the Line was finisht through the Disinal. The Messenger told us it had been the hard work of three days to measure the Length of only 5 Miles, and mark the Trees as they pass along, and by the most exact Survey they found the Breadth of the Disinal in this Place to be completely 15 Miles.

How wide it may be in other Parts, we can give no Account, but believe it grows narrower towards the North; possibly towards Albermarle Sound it may be something broader, where so many Rivers issue out of it. All we know for certain is, that from the Place where the Line enter'd the Disinal, to where it came out, we found the Road round that Portion of it which belongs to Virginia to be about 65 Miles. How great the Distance may be from Each of those Points, round that Part that falls within the Bounds of Carolina, we had no certain Information: tho' tis conjectur'd it cannot be so little as 30 Miles. At which rate the whole Circuit must be about an Hundred. What a Mass of Mud and Dirt is treasur'd up within this filthy cir-

1728 cumference, and what a Quantity of Water must perpetually
 March drain into it from the rising ground that Surrounds it on every
 Side?

Without taking the Exact level of the Dismal, we may be sure that it declines towards the Places where the Several Rivers take their Rise, in order to carrying off the constant Supplies of Water. Were it not for such Discharges, the whole Swamp would long Since have been converted into a Lake. On the other Side this Declension must be very gentle, else it would be laid perfectly dry by so many continual drains; Whereas, on the contrary, the Ground seems every where to be thoroughly drencht even in the dryest Season of the Year.

The Surveyors concluded this day's Work with running 25 chains up into the Firm Land, where they waited farther Orders from the Commissioners.

29 This day the Surveyors proceeded with the Line no more than 1 Mile and 15 Chains, being Interrupted by a Mill Swamp, thro' which they made no difficulty of wading, in order to make their work more exact.

Thus, like Norway-Mice, these worthy Gentlemen went right forward, without Suffering themselves to be turned out of the way by any Obstacle whatever.

We are told by some Travellers, that those Mice march in mighty Armies, destroying all the fruits of the Earth as they go along. But Something Peculiar to those obstinate little Animals is, that nothing stops them in their career, and if a House happen to stand in their way, disdaining to go an Inch about, they crawl up one side of it, and down the other: or if they meet with any River, or other Body of Water, they are so determin'd, that they swim directly over it, without varying one Point from their course for the Sake of any Safety or Convenience.

The Surveyors were also hinder'd some Time by Setting up

Posts in the great Road, to shew the Bounds between the two Colonies. 1729
March

Our Chaplain return'd to us in the Evening from Edenton, in Company with the Carolina Commissioners. He had preach'd there in the Court-House, for want of a consecrated Place, and made no less than 19 of Father Hennepin's Christians.

By the permission of the Carolina Commissioners, Mr. Swan was allow'd to go home, as soon as the Survey of the Dismal was finish'd; He met with this Indulgence for a Reason that might very well have excus'd his coming at all; Namely, that he was lately marry'd.

What remain'd of the Drudgery for this Season was left to Mr. Mosely, who had hitherto acted only in the capacity of a Commissioner. They offer'd to employ Mr. Joseph Mayo as their Surveyor in Mr. Swan's stead, but He thought it not proper to accept of it, because he had hitherto Acted as a Volunteer in behalf of Virginia, and did not care to change Sides, tho' it might have been to his Advantage.

The line was advanc'd this day 6 Miles and 35 chains, the 30 Woods being pretty clear, and interrupted with no Swamp, or other wet Ground. The Land hereabout had all the Marks of Poverty, being for the most Part Sandy and full of Pines. This kind of Ground, tho' unfit for Ordinary Tillage, will however bring Cotton and Potatoes in Plenty, and Consequently Food and Raiment to such as are easily contented, and, like the Wild Irish, find more Pleasure in Laziness than Luxury.

It also makes a Shift to produce Indian-corn, rather by the Felicity of the climate than by the Fertility of the Soil. They who are more Industrious than their Neighbours may make what Quantity of tar they please, tho' indeed they are not always sure of a Market for it.

The Method of burning Tar in Sweden and Muscovy Succeeds not well in this Warmer Part of the World. It seems they kill

1729
March

the Pine-Trees, by barking them quite round at a certain Height, which in those cold countreys brings down the Turpentine into the Stump in a Year's time. But experience has taught us that in warm Climates the Turpentine will not so easily descend, but is either fixt in the upper parts of the Tree, or fryed out by the intense Heat of the Sun.

Care was taken to Erect a Post in Every Road that our Line ran thro', with Virginia carv'd on the North-Side of it, and Carolina on the South, that the Bounds might every where appear. In the Evening the Surveyors took up their Quarters at the House of one Mr. Parker, who, by the Advantage of a better Spot of Land than Ordinary, and a more industrious Wife, lives comfortably, and has a very neat plantation.

31 It rain'd a little this Morning, but this, happening again upon a Sunday, did not interrupt our Business. However the Surveyors made no Scruple of protracting and platting off their work upon that good day, because it was rather an Amusement than a Drudgery.

Here the Men feasted on the fat of the Land, and believing the dirtiest part of their work was over, had a more than Ordinary Gaiety of Heart. We christen'd two of our Landlord's children, which might have remained Infidels all their lives, had not we carry'd Christianity home to his own Door.

The Truth of it is, our Neighbours of North Carolina are not so zealous as to go much out of their way to procure this benefit for their children: Otherwise, being so near Virginia, they might, without exceeding much Trouble, make a Journey to the next Clergyman, upon so good an Errand.

And indeed should the Neighbouring Ministers, once in two or three years, vouchsafe to take a turn among these Gentiles, to baptize them and their children, twould look a little Apostolical, and they might hope to be requited for it hereafter, if that be not thought too long to tarry for their Reward.

The Surveyors getting now upon better Ground, quite dis-
engag'd from Underwoods, pusht on the Line almost 12 Miles. 1729
April 1
They left Sommerton Chappel near 2 Miles to the Northward,
so that there was now no Place of Publick Worship left in the
whole Province of North Carolina.

The high Land of North Carolina was barren, and cover'd
with a deep Sand; and the Low Grounds were wet and boggy,
insomuch that several of our Horses were mir'd, and gave us
frequent Opportunities to shew our Horsemanship.

The Line cut William Spight's Plantation in two, leaving
little more than his dwelling House and Orchard in Virginia.
Sundry other Plantations were Split in the same unlucky Manner,
which made the Owners accountable to both Governments.
Wherever we pass'd we constantly found the Borderers laid it to
Heart if their Land was taken into Virginia: They chose much
rather to belong to Carolina, where they pay no Tribute, either
to God or to Cæsar.

Another reason was, that the Government there is so Loose,
and the Laws so feebly executed, that, like those in the Neigh-
bourhood of Sydon formerly, every one does just what seems
good in his own Eyes. If the Governor's hands have been
weak in that Province, under the Authority of the Lord Pro-
prietors, much weaker then were the hands of the Magistrate,
who, tho' he might have had Virtue enough to endeavour to
punish Offenders, which very rarely happen'd, yet that virtue
had been quite Impotent, for want of Ability to put it in execu-
tion.

Besides, their might have been some Danger, perhaps, in ven-
turing to be so rigorous, for fear of undergoing the Fate of an
honest Justice in Corotuck Precinct. This bold Magistrate, it
seems, taking upon him to order a fellow to the Stocks, for be-
ing disorderly in his Drink, was, for his intemperate Zeal, carry'd

1729
April

thither himself, and narrowly escap'd being whippt by the Rabble into the Bargain.

This easy day's work carried the Line to the Banks of Somerton-Creek, that runs out of Chowan River, a little below the Mouth of Nottoway.

- 2 In less than a Mile from Somerton creek the Line was carry'd to Black-water, which is the Name of the upper Part of Chowan, running some Miles above the Mouth of Nottoway. It must be observ'd that Chowan, after taking a compass round the most beautiful part of North Carolina, empties itself into Albermarle Sound, a few Miles above Edenton. The Tide flows 7 or 8 miles higher than where the River changes its Name, and is Navigable thus high for any small vessel. Our Line intersected it exactly half a Mile to the northward of the mouth of Nottoway. However, in Obedience to his Majesty's Command, we directed the Surveyors to come down the River as far as the Mouth of Nottoway, in order to continue our true West Line from thence.

Thus we found the Mouth of Nottoway to lye no more than half a Minute farther to the Northward than Mr. Lawson¹ had formerly done. That Gentleman's Observation, it seems, placed it in $36^{\circ} 30'$, and our Working made it out to be $36^{\circ} 30\frac{1}{2}'$ —a very inconsiderable Variance.

The Surveyors crost the River over against the Middle of the Mouth of Nottaway, where it was about 80 yards wide. From thence they ran the Line about half a Mile through a dirty Pocofon, as far as an Indian Field. Here we took up our Lodging in a moist Situation, having the Pocofon above mention'd on one Side of us, and a Swamp on the other.

In this Camp 3 of the Meherin Indians made us a Visit. They told us that the Small Remains of their Nation had deserted

¹ Lawson's *History of North Carolina*, in the same.

their Ancient Town, situated near the Mouth of Meherin River, for fear of the Cataubas, who had kill'd 14 of their People the Year before; and the few that Survived that Calamity, had taken refuge amongst the English, on the East side of Chowan. Tho', if the complaint of these Indians were true, they are hardly used by our Carolina Friends. But they are the less to be pitied, because they have ever been reputed the most false and treacherous to the English of all the Indians in the Neighbourhood.

1729
April

Nor far from the Place where we lay, I observ'd a large Oak which had been blown up by the Roots, the Body of which was Shiver'd into perfect Strings, and was, in truth, the most Violent Effects of Lightning I ever saw.

But the most curious Instance of that dreadful meteor happen'd at York, where a man was kill'd near a Pine Tree in which the Lightning made a Hole before it Struck the Man, and left an exact Figure of the Tree upon his Breast, with all its Branches, to the wonder of all that beheld it, in which I shall be more particular hereafter.

We made another tryal of the Variation in this place, and found it some Minutes less than we had done at Coratuck-Inlet; but so small a Difference might easily happen thro' some defect in one or other of the Observations, and, therefore, we alter'd not our compass for the Matter.

By the advantage of clear woods, the Line was extended 12 ³ miles and three Quarters, as far as the Banks of Meherin. Tho' the Mouth of this River lye 15 miles below the Mouth of Nottaway, yet it winds so much to the Northward, that we came upon it, after running this Small Distance. During the first 7 Miles, we observed the Soil to be poor and Sandy; but as we approacht Meherin it grew better, tho' there it was cut to pieces by Sundry Miry Branches, which discharge themselves

1729 into that River, Several of our Horses plunged up to the Saddle-
 April Skirts, and were not disengaged without Difficulty.

The latter Part of our Day's work was pretty laborious, because of the unevenness of the way, and because the low Ground of the River was full of Cypress-Snags, as Sharp and Dangerous to our Horses as so many chevaux-de-frize. We found the whole distance from the Mouth of Nottaway to Meherin River, where our Line intersected it, thirteen Miles and a Quarter.

It was hardly possible to find a level large enough on the Banks of the River whereupon to pitch our Tent. But tho' the Situation was, on that Account, not very convenient for us, yet it was for our poor Horses, by reason of the Plenty of Small Reeds on which they fed voraciously.

These Reeds are green here all the Year round, and will keep cattle in tolerable good Plight during the Winter. But whenever the Hogs come where they are, they destroy them in a Short time, by ploughing up their Roots, of which, unluckily, they are very fond.

The River was in this place about as wide as the River Jordan, that is, 40 Yards, and wou'd be Navigable very high for flat Bottom-Boats and Canoes, if it were not choakt up with large Trees, brought down by every Fresh. Tho' the Banks were full 20 feet high from the Surface of the Water, yet we saw certain Marks of their having been Overflow'd.

These Narrow Rivers that run high up into the Country are Subject to frequent Inundations, when the Waters are roll'd down with such Violence as to carry all before them. The Logs that are then floated, are very fatal to the bridges built over these rivers, Which can hardly be contriv'd Strong enough to stand against so much Weight and Violence join'd together.

The Isle of Wight County begins about 3 Miles to the East

of Meherin River, being divided from that of Nansimond only
by a Line of Markt trees. 1729
April

The River was here hardly fordable, tho' the Season had been
very dry. The Banks too were so Steep that our Horses were
forced to climb like Mules to get up them. Nevertheless we
had the Luck to recover the Opposite Shore without Damage. 4

We halted for half an hour at Charles Anderson's, who lives
on the Western Banks of the River, in order to christen one of
his children. In the mean time, the Surveyors extended the
Line 2 Miles and 39 chains, in which small Distance Meherin
River was so serpentine, that they crost it 3 times.

Then we went on to Mr. Kinchin's, a Man of Figure and
Authority in N Carolina, who lives about a Mile to the South-
ward of the Place where the Surveyors left off. By the Benefit
of a little pains, and good Management, this worthy Magistrate
lives in much Affluence.

Amongst other Instances of his Industry, he had planted a
good Orchard, which is not common in that Indolent climate;
nor is it at all Strange, that such improvident People, who take
no thought for the Morrow, shou'd save themselves the Trouble
to make Improvements that will not pay them for several Years
to come. Tho' if they cou'd trust futurity for any thing, they
certainly wou'd for Cyder, which they are so fond of, that they
generally drink it before it has done working, lest the Fermenta-
tion might unluckily turn it Sowr.

It is an Observation, which rarely fails of being true, both in
Virginia and Carolina, that those who take care to plant good
Orchards are, in their General characters, Industrious People.
This held good in our LANDLORD, who had many Houses built
on this Plantation, and every One kept in decent Repair. His
Wife, too, was tidy, his Furniture clean, his Pewter bright, and
nothing seem'd to be wanting to make his Home comfortable.

Mr. Kinchin made us the Compliment of his House, but be-

1729
April

cause we were willing to be as little troublesome as possible, we order'd the Tent to be pitch'd in his Orchard, where the Blossoms of the Apple Trees contributed not a little to the sweetness of our Lodging.

Because the Spring was now pretty forward, and the "Rattle-Snakes began to crawl out of their Winter-Quarters, and might grow dangerous, both to the Men and their Horses, it was determin'd to proceed no farther with the Line till the Fall. Besides, the Uncommon Fatigue the People had undergone for near 6 Weeks together, and the Inclination they all had to visit their Respective Families, made a Recess highly reasonable.

The Surveyors were employ'd great part of the Day, in forming a Correct and Elegant Map of the Line, from Corotuck-Inlet to the Place where they left off. On casting up the account in the most accurate manner, they found the whole distance we had run to amount to 73 Miles and 13 chains. Of the Map they made two fair copies, which agreeing exactly, were subscrib'd by the Commissioners of both colonies, and one of them was delivered to those on the Part of Virginia, and the other to those on the Part of North Carolina.

- 6 Thus we finish'd our Spring Campaign, and having taken leave of our Carolina-Friends, and agreed to meet them again the Tenth of September following, at the same Mr. Kinchin's, in order to continue the Line, we cross'd Meherin River near a Quarter of a Mile from the House. About ten Miles from that we halted at Mr. Kindred's Plantation, where we Christen'd two Children.

It happen'd that some of Isle of Wight militia Were exercising in the Adjoining Pasture, and there were Females enough attending that Martial Appearance to form a more invincible corps.

Ten miles farther we pass'd Nottoway River at Bolton's Ferry, and took up our Lodgings about three Miles from thence, at the House of Richard Parker, an honest Planter, whose Labours

were rewarded with Plenty, which, in this country is the Constant Portion of the Industrious.

1729
April

The Next day being Sunday, we order'd Notice to be sent to all the Neighbourhood that there wou'd be a Sermon at this Place, and an Opportunity of Christening their Children. But the Likelihood of Rain got the better of their Devotion, and what perhaps, Might Still be a Stronger motive of their Curiosity. In the Morning we despatcht a runner to the Nottoway Town, to let the Indians know we intended them a Visit that Evening, and our honest Landlord was so kind as to be our Pilot thither, being about 4 Miles from his House.

Accordingly in the Afternoon we marcht in good Order to the Town, where the Female Scouts, station'd on an Eminence for that purpose, had no sooner spy'd us, but they gave Notice of our Approach to their Fellow-Citizens by continual Whoops and Cries, which cou'd not possibly have been more dismal at the Sight of their most implacable Enemies.

This Signal Assembled all their Great Men, who receiv'd us in a Body, and conducted us into the Fort. This Fort was a Square Piece of Ground, inclos'd with Substantial Puncheons, or Strong Palisades, about ten feet high, and leaning a little outwards, to make a Scalade more difficult.

Each side of the Square might be about 100 Yards long, with Loop-holes at proper Distances, through which they may fire upon the Enemy.

Within this Inclosure we found Bark Cabanes Sufficient to lodge all their people, in Case they should be obliged to retire thither. These Cabanes are no other but Close Arbours made of Saplings, arched at the top, and cover'd so well with Bark as to be proof against all Weather. The fire is made in the Middle, according to the Hibernian Fashion, the Smoak whereof finds no other Vent but at the Door, and so keeps the whole family Warm, at the Expence both of their Eyes and Complexion.

1729

April

The Indians have no standing Furniture in their Cabanes but Hurdles to repose their Persons upon, which they cover with Mats or Deer-skins. We were conducted to the best Apartments in the Fort, which just before had been made ready for our Reception, and adorn'd with new Mats, that were sweet and clean.

The Young Men had Painted themselves in a Hideous Manner, not so much for Ornament as Terror. In that frightful Equipage they entertain'd us with Sundry War-Dances, wherein they endeavour'd to look as formidable as possible. The Instrument they danc'd to was an Indian-drum, that is, a large Gourd with a Skin braçt tort over the Mouth of it. The Dancers all Sang to this Musick, keeping exact Time with their feet, while their Heads and Arms were screw'd into a thousand Menacing Postures.

Upon this occasion the Ladies had array'd themselves in all their finery. They were Wrapt in their Red and Blue Match-Coats, thrown so Negligently about them, that their Mehogony Skins appear'd in Several Parts, like the Lacedæmonian Damsels of Old. Their Hair was breeded with white and Blue Peak, and hung gracefully in a large Roll upon their Shoulders.

This peak Consists of Small Cylinders cut out of a Conque-Shell, drill'd through and Strung like Beads. It serves them both for Money and Jewels, the Blue being of much greater Value than the White, for the same reason that Ethiopian Mistresses in France are dearer than French, because they are more Scarce. The Women wear Necklaces and Bracelets of these precious Materials, when they have a mind to appear lovely. Tho' their complexions be a little Sad-Colour'd, yet their Shapes are very Strait and well proportion'd. Their Faces are Seldom handsome, yet they have an Air of Innocence and Bashfulness, that with a little less dirt wou'd not fail to make them desirable. Such Charms might have had their full Effect upon Men who

1729

April

had been so long deprived of female conversation, but that the whole Winter's Soil was so crufted on the Skins of those dark Angels, that it requir'd a very Strong Appetite to approach them. The Bear's oyl, with which they anoint their Persons all over, makes their Skins Soft, and at the Same time protects them from every Species of Vermin that use to be troublesome to other uncleanly People.

We were unluckily so many, that they cou'd not well make us the Complement of Bed-fellows, according to the Indian Rules of Hospitality, tho' a grave Matron whisper'd one of the Commissioners very civilly in the Ear, that if her Daughter had been but one year Older, she should have been at his Devotion.

It is by no means a loss of Reputation among the Indians, for Damsels that are Single to have Intrigues with the Men; on the contrary, they account it an Argument of Superior Merit to be liked by a great Number of Gallants. However, like the Ladys that Game they are a little Mercenary in their Amours, and seldom bestow their Favours out of Stark Love and Kindness. But after these Women have once appropriated their Charms by Marriage, they are from thenceforth faithful to their Vows, and will hardly ever be tempted by an Agreeable Gallant, or be provokt by a Brutal or even by a fumbling Husband to go astray.

The little Work that is done among the Indians is done by the poor Women, while the men are quite Idle, or at most employ'd only in the Gentlemanly Diversions of Hunting and Fishing.

In this, as well as in their Wars, they now use nothing but Fire-Arms, which they purchase of the English for Skins. Bows and Arrows are grown into disuse, except only amongst their Boys. Nor is it ill Policy, but on the contrary very prudent, thus to furnish the Indians with Fire-Arms, because it makes them depend entirely upon the English, not only for their Trade, but even for their subsistence. Besides, they were really able to

1729
April

do more mischief, while they made use of Arrows, of which they wou'd let Silently fly Several in a Minute with Wonderful Dexterity, whereas now they hardly ever discharge their Fire-locks more than once, which they insidiously do from behind a Tree, and then retire as nimbly as the Dutch Horse U'd to do now and then formerly in Flanders.

We put the Indians to no expence, but only of a little Corn for our Horses, for which in Gratitude we cheer'd their hearts with what Rum we had left, which they love better than they do their Wives and Children.

Tho' these Indians dwell among the English, and see in what Plenty a little Industry enables them to live, yet they chuse to continue in their Stupid Idleness, and to Suffer all the Inconveniences of Dirt, Cold, and Want, rather than to disturb their heads With care, or defile their Hands with labour.

The whole Number of People belonging to the Notoway Town, if you include Women and Children, amount to about 200. These are the only Indians of any consequence now remaining within the Limits of Virginia. The rest are either removed, or dwindled to a very inconsiderable Number, either by destroying one another, or else by the Small-Pox and other Diseases. Tho' nothing has been so fatal to them as their ungovernable Passion for Rum, with which, I am sorry to say it, they have been but too liberally supply'd by the English that live near them.

And here I must lament the bad Success Mr. Boyle's Charity has hitherto had towards converting any of these poor Heathens to Christianity. Many children of our Neighbouring Indians have been brought up in the College of William and Mary. They have been taught to read and write, and have been carefully Instructed in the Principles of the Christian Religion, till they came to be men. Yet after they return'd home, instead

of civilizeing and converting the rest, they have immediately Relapt into Infidelity and Barbarism themselves.

1729
April

And some of them too have made the worst use of the Knowledge they acquir'd among the English, by employing it against their Benefactors. Besides, as they unhappily forget all the good they learn, and remember the Ill, they are apt to be more vicious and disorderly than the rest of their Countrymen.

I ought not to quit this Subject without doing Justice to the great Prudence of Colo Spotswood in this Affair. That Gentleman was lieut Governor of Virginia when Carolina was engaged in a Bloody War with the Indians. At that critical Time it was thought expedient to keep a Watchful Eye upon our Tributary Savages, who we knew had nothing to keep them to their Duty but their Fears.

Then it was that he demanded of each Nation a Competent Number of their great Men's Children to be sent to the College, where they serv'd as so many Hostages for the good Behaviour of the Rest, and at the same time were themselves principled in the Christian Religion. He also Plac'd a School-Master among the Saponi Indians, at the salary of Fifty Pounds P Annum, to instruct their Children. The Person that undertook that Charitable work was Mr. Charles Griffin, a Man of a good Family, who by the Innocence of his Life, and the Sweetness of his Temper, was perfectly well qualify'd for that pious undertaking. Besides, he had so much the Secret of mixing Pleasure with instruction, that he had not a Scholar, who did not love him affectionately.

Such Talents must needs have been blest with a Proportionable Success, had he not been unluckily remov'd to the College, by which he left the good work he had begun unfinished. In short, all the Pains he had taken among the Infidels had no other Effect but to make them something cleaner than other Indians are.

1729
 April { The Care Colo Spotswood took to tincture the Indian Children with Christianity produc'd the following Epigram, which was not publisht during his Administration, for fear it might then have lookt like flattery.

Long has the Furious Priest assay'd in Vain,
 With Sword and Faggot, Infidels to gain,
 But now the Milder Soldier wisely tries
 By Gentler Methods to unveil their Eyes.
 Wonders apart, he knew 'twere vain t'engage
 The fix'd Preventions of Misguided Age.
 With fairer Hopes he forms the Indian Youth
 To early Manners, Probity and Truth.
 The Lyon's whelp thus on the Lybian Shore }
 Is tam'd and Gentled by the Artful Moor, }
 Not the Grim Sire, inured to Blood before. }

I am sorry I can't give a Better Account of the State of the Poor Indians with respect to Christianity, altho' a great deal of Pains has been and still continues to be taken with them. For my Part, I must be of Opinion, as I hinted before, that there is but one way of Converting these poor Infidels, and reclaiming them from Barbarity, and that is, Charitably to intermarry with them, according to the Modern Policy of the most Christian King in Canada and Louifiana.

Had the English done this at the first Settlement of the Colony, the Infidelity of the Indians had been worn out at this Day, with their Dark Complexions, and the Country had swarm'd with People more than it does with Insects.

It was certainly an unreasonable Nicety, that prevented their entering into so good-Natur'd an Alliance. All Nations of men have the same Natural Dignity, and we all know that very bright Talents may be lodg'd under a very dark Skin. The principal Difference between one People and another proceeds only from the Different Opportunities of Improvement.

The Indians by no means want understanding, and are in

their Figure tall and well-proportion'd. Even their Copper-colour'd Complexion wou'd admit of Blanching, if not in the first, at the farthest in the Second Generation. 1728
April

I may safely venture to say, the Indian Women would have made altogether as Honest Wives for the first Planters, as the Damsels they us'd to purchase from aboard the Ships. It is Strange, therefore, that any good Christian Shou'd have refused a wholesome, Straight Bed-fellow, when he might have had so fair a Portion with her, as the Merit of saving her Soul.

We rested on our clean Mats very comfortably, tho' alone, and the next Morning went to the Toilet of some of the Indian Ladys, where, what with the Charms of their Persons and the Smoak of their Apartments, we were almost blinded. They offer'd to give us Silk-Grafs Baskets of their own making, which we Modestly refused, knowing that an Indian present, like that of a Nun, is a Liberality put out to Interest, and a Bribe plac'd to the greatest Advantage. 8

Our Chaplain observ'd with concern, that the Ruffles of Some of our Fellow Travellers were a little discolour'd with pochoon, wherewith the good Man had been told those Ladies us'd to improve their invisible charms.

About 10 a Clock we marched out of Town in good order, & the War Captains saluted us with a Volley of Small-Arms. From thence we proceeded over Black-water Bridge to colo' Henry Harrisons, where we congratulated each other upon our Return into Christendom.

Thus ended our Progress for this Season, which we may justly say was attended with all the Success that could be expected. Besides the Punctual Performance of what was Committed to us, we had the Pleasure to bring back every one of our Company in perfect Health. And this we must acknowledge to be a Singular Blessing, considering the Difficulties and Dangers to which they had been expos'd.

1729
Sept.

We had reason to fear the many Waters and Sunken Grounds, thro' which We were obliged to wade, might have thrown the men into Sundry Acute distempers; especially the Dismal, where the Soil was so full of Water, and the Air so full of Damps, that nothing but a Dutchman cou'd live in them.

Indeed the Foundation of all our Success was the Exceeding dry Season. It rain'd during the whole Journey but rarely, and then, as when Herod built his Temple, only in the Night or upon the Sabbath, when it was no hinderance at all to our progresss.

The tenth of September being thought a little too soon for the Commissioners to meet, in order to proceed on the Line, on account of Snakes, t'was agreed to put it off to the twentieth of the same Month, of which due Notice was sent to the Carolina-Commissioners.

- 19 We, on the part of Virginia, that we might be sure to be punctual, arriv'd at Mr. Kinchin's, the place appointed, on the 19th, after a Journey of three days, in which nothing Remarkable happen'd.

We found three of the Carolina-Commissioners had taken Possession of the House, having come thither by water from Edenton. By the Great Quantity of Provisions these Gentlemen brought, and the few men they had to eat them, we were afraid they intended to carry the Line to the South sea.

They had 500lbs of bacon and dry'd Beef, and 500lbs of Bisket, and not above three or four men. The misfortune was, they forgot to provide Horses to carry their good things, or else trusted to the Incertainty of hireing them here, which, considering the Place, was leaving too much to that Jilt, Hazard.

On our part we had taken better Care, being completely furnisht with every thing necessary for transporting our Baggage

and Provisions. Indeed we brought no other Provisions out with us but 1000lbs of Bread, and had Faith enough to depend on Providence for our Meat, being desirous to husband the publick Money as much as possible. 1729
Sept.

We had no less than 20 men, besides the Chaplain, the Surveyors and all the Servants, to be Subsisted upon this Bread. However, that it might hold out the better, our men had been Order'd to provide themselves at Home with Provision for Ten days, in which time we judg'd we should get beyond the Inhabitants, where Forest-Game of all sorts was like to be plenty at that time of the Year.

This being the day appointed for our Rendezvous, great part of it was Spent in the careful fixing our Baggage and Assembling our Men, who were order'd to meet us here. We took care to examine their Arms, and made proof of the Powder provided for the Expedition. 20

Our Provision-Horses had been hinder'd by the rain from coming up exactly at the Day; but this Delay was the less Disappointment, by reason of the ten days' Subsistence the men had been directed to provide for themselves.

Mr. Moseley did not join us till the afternoon, nor Mr. Swan till Several Days after.

Mr. Kinchin had unadvisedly sold the Men a little Brandy of his own making, which produced much disorder, causing some to be too cholerick, and others too loving; Insomuch that a Damself, who assisted in the Kitchen, had certainly Suffer'd what the Nuns call Martyrdom, had she not capitulated a little too soon.

This outrage would have call'd for some severe Discipline, had she not bashfully withdrawn herself early in the Morning, & so carry'd off the Evidence.

We despatcht away the Surveyors without Loss of Time, who, with all their diligence, could carry the Line no farther 21

1729
Sept. than 3 Miles and 176 Poles, by reason the Low-Ground was one entire Thicket. In that distance they crost Meherin River the 4th time. In the mean while the Virginia-Commissioners thought proper to conduct their Baggage a farther way about, for the Convenience of a clearer Road.

The Carolina-Gentlemen did at length, more by Fortune than forecast, hire a clumsy Vehicle, something like a cart, to transport their Effects as far as Roanoak. This wretched Machine, at first Setting out, met with a very rude choque, that broke a Case-Bottle of Cherry Brandy in so unlucky a Manner that not one precious Drop was saved. This Melancholy Beginning foreboded an unprosperous Journey, and too quick a Return, to the Persons most immediately concern'd.

In our way we crost Fountains Creek, which runs into Meherin River, so call'd from the disaster of an unfortunate Indian Trader who had formerly been drowned in it, and, like Icarus, left his Name to that fatal stream. We took up our Quarters on the Plantation of John Hill, where we pitcht our Tent, with design to tarry till such time as the Surveyors cou'd work their way to us.

22 This being Sunday, we had an Opportunity of resting from our Labours. The expectation of such a Novelty as a Sermon in these Parts brought together a Numerous Congregation. When the Sermon was over, our Chaplain did his part towards making Eleven of them Christians.

Several of our men had Intermitting feavers, but were soon restor'd to their Health again by proper Remedies. Our chief Medicine was Dogwood Bark, which we used, instead of that of Peru, with good Success. Indeed, it was given in larger Quantity, but then, to make the Patients amends, they swallowed much fewer Doses.

In the afternoon our Provision-Horses arrived Safe in the Camp. They had met with very heavy Rains, but, thank God, not a Single Bisket receiv'd the least Damage thereby.

We were furnisht by the Neighbours with very lean Cheefe and very fat Mutton, upon which occasion twill not be improper to draw one conclusion, from the Evidence of North Carolina, that Sheep would thrive much better in the Woods than in Pasture Land, provided a careful Shepherd were employed to keep them from Straying, and, by the help of Dogs, to protect them also from the wolves. 1729
Sept.

The Surveyors came to us at Night, tho' they had not brought the Line so far as our Camp, for which reason we thought it needless to go forward till they came up with us. They cou'd run no more than 4 Miles and 5 Poles, because the Ground was every where grown up with thick Bushes.

The Soil here appear'd to be very good, tho' much broken betwixt Fountain creek and Roanoak River. The Line crost Meherin the 5th and last time, nor were our People sorry to part with a Stream the Meanders of which had given them so much Trouble.

Our Hunters brought us four wild Turkeys, which at that Season began to be fat and very delicious, especially the Hens.

These Birds seem to be of the Bustard kind, and fly heavily. Some of them are exceedingly large, and weigh upwards of 40 Pounds; Nay, some bold Historians venture to say, upwards of 50. They run very fast, stretching forth their Wings all the time, like the Ostrich, by way of Sails to quicken their Speed.

They roost commonly upon very high Trees, Standing near some River or Creek, and are so stupify'd at the Sight of Fire, that if you make a Blaze in the Night near the Place where they roost, you may fire upon them Several times successively, before they will dare to fly away.

Their Spurs are so Sharp and Strong that the Indians used formerly to point their Arrows with them, tho' now they point them with a Sharp white Stone. In the Spring the Turkey-

1729 Cocks begin to gobble, which is the Language wherein they
 Sept. make Love.

. It rain'd very hard in the Night, with a violent Storm of Thunder and Lightening, which oblig'd us to trench in our Tent all round, to carry off the Water that fell upon it.

24 So soon as the men could dry their Blankets, we sent out the Surveyors, who now meeting with more favourable Grounds, advanc'd the line 7 Miles and 82 Poles. However, the Commissioners did not think proper to decamp that day, believing they might easily overtake the Surveyors the next. In the mean time they sent out some of their most expert Gunners, who brought in four more wild Turkeys.

This part of the Country being very proper for raising Cattle and Hogs, we observ'd the Inhabitants lived in great plenty without killing themselves with Labour.

I found near our Camp some Plants of that kind of Rattle-Snake Root, called Star-grass. The Leaves shoot out circularly, and grow Horisontally and near the Ground. The Root is in Shape not unlike the Rattle of that Serpent, and is a Strong Antidote against the Bite of it. It is very bitter, and where it meets with any Poison, works by Violent Sweats, but where it meets with none, has no Sensible Operation but that of putting the Spirits into a great Hurry, and so of promoting Perspiration.

The Rattle-snake has an utter Antipathy to this Plant, inso-much that if you Smear your hands with the Juice of it, you may handle the Viper Safely. Thus much I can say on my own Experience, that once in July, when these Snakes are in their greatest Vigour, I besmear'd a Dog's Nose with the Powder of this Root, and made him trample on a large Snake Several times, which, however, was so far from biting him, that it perfectly Sicken'd at the Dog's Approach, and turn'd its Head from him with the Utmost Aversion.

Our Chaplain, to Shew his Zeal, made an Excursion of 6 Miles to christen 2 children, but without the least regard to the good Cheer at these Solemnities. 1729
Sept.

The Surveyors taking the Advantage of clear Woods, pushed on the Line 7 Miles and 40 Poles. In the mean time the Commissioners marched with the Baggage about 12 miles, and took up their Quarters near the Banks of the Beaver Pond, (which is one Branch of Fountain's creek,) just by the place where the Surveyors were to finish their day's work.

In our march one of the men kill'd a Small Rattle-Snake, which had no more than two Rattles. Those Vipers remain in Vigour generally till towards the End of September, or Sometimes later, if the Weather continue a little warm. On this consideration we had provided three Several Sorts of Rattle-Snake-Root, made up into proper Doses, and ready for immediate use, in case any one of the Men or their Horses had been bitten.

We crossed Fountain's Creek once more in our Journey this day, and found the Grounds very Rich, notwithstanding they were broken and Stony.

Near the place where we encamped the county of Brunswick is divided from the Isle of Wight. These Counties run quite on the back of Surry and Prince George, and are laid out in very irregular Figures.

As a Proof the Land mended hereabouts, we found the Plantations began to grow thicker by much than we had found them lower down.

We hurry'd away the Surveyors without Loss of time, who extended the Line 10 Miles and 160 Poles, the Grounds proving dry and free from Under-woods. By the way the chain-carriers kill'd two more Rattle-Snakes, which I own was a little ungrateful, because two or three of the Men had Strided over them without receiving any Hurt; tho' one of these Vipers had

1729 made bold to Strike at one of the Baggage Horses, as he went
 Sept. along, but by good Luck his Teeth only grazed on the hoof,
 without doing him any Damage. However, these Accidents
 were, I think, so many Arguments that we had very good Reason
 to defer our coming out till the 20th of September.

We observ'd Abundance of St. Andrew's Crofs in all the Woods we pass'd thro', which is the common Remedy us'd by the Indian traders to cure their horses when they are bitten by Rattle-Snakes.

It grows on a Strait Stem, about 18 Inches high, and bears a Yellow Flower on the Top, that has an Eye of Black in the Middle, with Several Pairs of Narrow Leaves Shooting out at right Angles from the Stalk over against one another.

This Antidote grows Providentially all over the Woods, and upon all Sorts of Soil, that it may be every where at hand in Case a Disaster should Happen, and may be had all the hot Months while the Snakes are dangerous.

About four a'clock in the Afternoon we took up our Quarters upon Caban Branch, which also discharges itself into Fountain Creek. On our way we observed Several Meadows cloth'd with very rank-Grass, and Branches full of tall Reeds, in which Cattle keep themselves fat good part of the Winter. But Hogs are as injurious to both as Goats are said to be to Vines, and for that Reason it was not lawful to Sacrifice them to Bacchus. We halted by the way to Christen two Children at a Spring, where their Mothers waylaid us for that good Purpose.

27 It was ten of the clock before the Surveyors got to work, because some of the Horses had straggled to a great Distance from the Camp. Nevertheless, meeting with Practicable Woods, they advanc'd the Line 9 Miles and 104 Poles. We cross'd over Pea-Creek about four Miles from our Quarters, and, three Miles farther, Lizard-Creek, both which empty their Waters into Roanoak River.

Between these two Creeks a poor Man waited for us with five Children to be baptiz'd, and we halted till the Ceremony was ended. The Land seem'd to be very good, by the largeness of the Trees, tho' very Stony. We proceeded as far as Pidgeon-Rooft-Creek, which also runs into Roanoak, and there Quarter'd. 1729
Sept.

We had not the pleasure of the Company of any of the Carolina-Commissioners in this day's March, except Mr. Moseley's, the rest tarrying behind to wait the coming up of their Baggage-Cart, which they had now not seen nor heard (though the Wheels made a Dismal Noise) for several days past.

Indeed it was a very difficult Undertaking to conduct a Cart thro' such pathless and perplexed Woods, and no wonder if its Motion was a little Planetary. We would have paid them the Complement of waiting for them, cou'd we have done it at any other Expence but that of the Publick.

In the Stony Grounds we rode over we found great Quantity of the true Ipocoacanna, which in this part of the World is call'd Indian-Physick. This has Several Stalks growing up from the Same Root about a Foot high, bearing a Leaf resembling that of a Straw-Berry. It is not so strong as that from Brazil, but has the same happy Effects, If taken in Somewhat a larger Dose. It is an Excellent Vomit, and generally cures intermitting Fevers and Bloody Fluxes at once or twice taking. There is abundance of it in the upper part of the Country, where it delights most in a Stony Soil intermixt with black Mold.

Our Surveyors got early to work, yet cou'd forward the Line but 6 miles and 121 Poles, because of the uneven Grounds in the Neighbourhood of Roanoak, which they cross'd in this Day's work. 28

In that Place the River is 49 Poles wide, and rolls down a crystal Stream of very Sweet water, Insonmuch that when there comes to be a great Monarch in this Part of the World, he will

1729
Sept.

cause all the Water for his own Table to be brought from Roanoak, as the great Kings of Persia did theirs from the Nile and Choaspis, because the Waters of those Rivers were light, and not apt to corrupt.¹

The great Falls of Roanoak lie about 20 Miles lower, to which a Sloop of Moderate Burthen may come up. There are, besides these, many Smaller Falls above, tho' none that entirely intercept the Passage of the River, as the great Ones do, by a Chain of Rocks for 8 Miles together.

The River forks about 36 Miles higher, and both Branches are pretty equal in Breadth where they divide, tho' the Southern, now call'd the Dan, runs up the farthest. That to the North runs away near North-west, and is call'd the Staunton, and heads not far from the Source of Appamatuck River, while the Dan stretches away pretty near West & runs clear thro' the great Mountains.

We did not follow the Surveyors till towards Noon, being detain'd in our camp to Christen Several more Children. We were conducted a nearer way, by a famous Woodsman, call'd Epaphroditus Bainton. This Forester Spends all his time in ranging the Woods, and is said to make great Havock among the Deer, and other Inhabitants of the Forest, not much wilder than Himself.

We proceeded to the Canoe-Landing on Roanoak, where we pass'd the River with the Baggage. But the Horses were directed to a Ford about a Mile higher, call'd by the Indians Moni-seep, which signifies, in their Jargon, Shallow Water. This is the Ford where the Indian-Traders used to cross with their Horses, in their way to the Catauba Nation.

¹The same Humour prevails at this day in the Kings of Denmark, who order all the East India Ships of that nation to call at the Cape of Good Hope, and take in a But of Water from a Spring on the Table Hill, and bring it to Copenhagen, for Their Majesty's own Drinking.

There are many Rocks in the River thereabouts, on which grows a kind of Water-Grafs, which the wild Geese are fond of, and resort to it in great Numbers. 1729
Sept.

We landed on the South Side of Roanoak at a Plantation of Colo. Mumford's, where, by that Gentleman's Special Directions, we met with Sundry Refreshments. Here we pitcht our Tent, for the benefit of the Prospect, upon an Eminence that overlookt a broad Piece of Low Ground, very rich, tho' liable to be overflow'd.

By the way, one of our Men kill'd another Rattle-Snake, with 11 Rattles, having a large Gray Squirrel in his Maw, the head of which was already digested, while the Body remain'd Still entire.

The way these Snakes catch their Prey is thus: They Ogle the poor little animal, till by force of the Charm he falls down Stupify'd and Senseless on the Ground. In that condition the Snake approaches, and moistens first one Ear and then the Other with his Spawl, and after that the other Parts of the Head, to make all Slippery. When that is done, he draws this Member into his Mouth, and after it, by Slow Degrees, all the rest of the Body.

This being Sunday, we had Divine Service and a Sermon, at 29 which Several of the Borderers assisted, and we concluded the Duties of the Day in the Christening five Children. Our Devotion being perform'd in the Open Field, like that of Mr. Whitfield's Flocks, an unfortunate Shower of Rain had almost dispers'd our Congregation. About four in the Afternoon the Carolina-Commissioners made a Shift to come up with us, whom we had left at Pidgeon-Rooft Creek the Fryday before, waiting for their Provisions. When their Cart came up they prudently discharg'd it, and rather chose to hire two Men to carry some part of their Baggage. The Rest they had been Obliged to

1729
Sept. leave behind, in the Crotch of an Old Tree, for want of proper Conveniences to transport it any farther.

We found in the low Ground Several Plants of the Fern Root, which is said to be much the Strongest Antidote yet discover'd against the Poison of the Rattle-Snake. The Leaves of it resemble those of Fern, from whence it obtain'd its Name. Several Stalks shoot from the same Root, about 6 Inches long, that ly mostly on the Ground. It grows in a very Rich Soil, under the Protection of Some tall Tree, that Shades it from the Meridian Beams of the Sun. The Root has a faint Spicy tast, and is preferr'd by the Southern Indians to all other Counter-poisons in this Country.

But there is another Sort preferr'd by the Northern Indians, that they call Seneca Rattle-Snake-Root, to which wonderful Vertues are ascrib'd in the Cure of Pleurisy, Feavers, Rhumatisms, and Dropsys; besides it being a powerfull Antidote against the Venom of the Rattle-Snake.

In the Evening the Messenger we had sent to Christanna return'd with five Saponi Indians. We cou'd not entirely rely on the Dexterity of our own Men, which induced us to send for some of the Indians. We agreed with two of the most expert of them, upon reasonable Terms, to hunt for us the remaining Part of our Expedition. But one of them falling Sick soon after, we were content to take only the other, whose Hunting Name was Bear-skin.

This Indian, either by his Skill or good Luck, Supply'd us plentifully all the way with Meat, Seldom discharging his piece in vain.

By his Assistance, therefore, we were able to keep our men to their Business, without Suffering them to Straggle about the Woods, on pretence of furnishing us with Necessary Food.

It had rain'd all night, and made every thing so wet, that our Surveyors cou'd not get to their Work before Noon. They

cou'd therefore measure no more than four Miles and 220 Poles, ¹⁷²⁹ which, according to the best information we cou'd get, was near ^{Sept.} as high as the uppermost Inhabitant at that time.

We crost the Indian Trading path above-mention'd about a Mile from our Camp, and a Mile beyond that forded Haw-Tree-Creek. The Woods we pass'd thro' had all the Tokens of Sterility, except a small Poison'd Field, on which grew no Tree bigger than a Slender Sapling. The larger Trees had been destroyed, either by Fire or Caterpillars, which is often the Case in the upland Woods, and the places where such Defolation happens are call'd Poison'd Fields.

We took up our Quarters upon a Branch of Great Creek, where there was tolerable good Grass for the poor Horses. These poor Animals having now got beyond the Latitude of Corn, were obliged to Shift as well as they cou'd for themselves.

On our way the men rouf'd a Bear, which being the first we had seen since we came out, the poor Beast had many pursuers. Several Persons contended for the Credit of killing Him: tho' he was so poor he was not worth the Powder. This was some Disappointment to our Woodsmen, who commonly prefer the Flesh of Bears to every kind of Venison. There is Something indeed peculiar to this Animal, namely, that its fat is very firm, and may be eaten plentifully without rising in the Stomach. The Paw (which, when stript of the hair, looks like a Human Foot,) is accounted a delicious Morfel by all who are not Shockt at the ungracious Resemblance it bears to a Human Foot.

There was a white Frost this morning on the Ground, occasion'd by a North-West Wind, which stood our Friend in dispersing all Aguish Damps, and making the Air wholesome at the Same time that it made it cold. Encourag'd therefore by

1729

Oct.

the Weather, Our Surveyors got to work early, and by the Benefit of Clear Woods, and Level Ground, drove the Line 12 Miles and 12 Poles.

At a Small Distance from our Camp we crost Great Creek, and about 7 Miles farther Nut-bush Creek, so call'd from the many Hazle-Trees growing upon it. By good Luck Many Branches of these Creeks were full of Reeds, to the great comfort of our Horses. Near five Miles from thence we encamp't on a Branch that runs into Nut-Bush Creek, where those Reeds flourish'd more than Ordinary. The Land we march't over was for the most part broken and Stony, and in some places cover'd over with Thickets almost impenetrable.

At Night the Surveyors, taking Advantage of a very clear Sky, made a third Tryal of the Variation, and found it Still something less than 3 Degrees, so that it did not diminish by advancing towards the West, or by approaching the Mountains, nor yet by encreasing our distance from the Sea; but remain'd much the Same we had found it at Corotuck-Inlet.

One of our Indians kill'd a large Fawn, which was very welcome, tho', like Hudibras's Horse, it had hardly flesh Enough to cover its Bones.

In the low Grounds the Carolina Gentlemen shew'd us another Plant, which they said was us'd in their country to cure the Bite of the Rattle-Snake. It put forth Several Leaves in figure like a Heart, and was clouded so like the common Asarabacca, that I conceived it to be of that Family.

- 2 So Soon as the Horses cou'd be found, we hurry'd away the Surveyors, who advanc't the line 9 Miles and 254 Poles. About 3 Miles from the Camp they crost a large Creek, which the Indians call'd Massamoni, Signifying, in their Language, Paint-Creek, because of the great Quantity of Red ochre found in its banks. This in every Fresh tinges the Water just as the same Mineral did formerly, and to this day continues to tinge, the

famous River Adonis, in Phœnicia, by which there hangs a celebrated Fable.

1729
Oct.

Three Miles beyond that we past another Water with difficulty, call'd Yaypatso, or Bever Creek. Those industrious Animals had damm'd up the water so high, that we had much ado to get over. 'Tis hardly credible how much work of this kind they will do in the Space of one Night. They bite young Saplings into proper Lengths with their Fore-teeth, which are exceeding Strong and Sharp, and afterwards drag them to the Place where they intend to Stop the Water.

Then they know how to join Timber and Earth together with so much Skill, that their Work is able to resist the most violent Flood that can happen. In this they are qualify'd to instruct their Betters, it being certain their damms will stand firm when the Strongest that are made by men will be carry'd down the Stream.

We observed very broad low Grounds upon this Creek, with a growth of large Trees, and all the other Signs of Fertility, but seem'd subject to be every where overflow'd in a fresh.

The certain way to catch these Sagacious Animals is thus: Squeeze all the Juice out of the large Pride of the Beaver, and 6 Drops out of the small Pride. Powder the inward Bark of Sassafras, and mix it with this Juice, then bait therewith a Steel Trap, and they will eagerly come to it, and be taken.

About three Miles and an half farther we came to the Banks of another creek, call'd, in the Saponi Language, Ohimpa-moni, Signifying Jumping Creek, from the frequent Jumping of Fish during the Spring Season.

Here we encampt, and by the time the Horses were hobbled, our Hunters brought us no less than a Brace and a half of Deer, which made great Plenty, and consequently great content in our Quarters.

Some of our People had Shot a great Wild Cat, which was

1729

Oct.

that fatal moment making a comfortable Meal upon a Fox-Squirrel, and an Ambitious Sportsman of our Company claim'd the merit of killing this monster after it was dead.

The Wild-cat is as big again as any Household-Cat, and much the fiercest Inhabitant of the Woods. Whenever 'tis disabled, it will tear its own Flesh for madness. Altho' a Panther will run away from a Man, a Wild-cat will only make a Surly Retreat, now and then facing about, if he be too closely pursued; and will even pursue in his turn, if he observe the least Sign of Fear or even of caution in those that pretend to follow Him.

The Flesh of this beast, as well as of the Panther, is as white as veal, and altogether as sweet and delicious.

- 3 We got to work early this Morning, and carry'd the line 8 Miles and a 160 Poles. We forded Several Runs of Excellent Water, and afterwards travest a large level of high land full of lofty Walnut, Poplar, and White Oak Trees, which are certain Proofs of a fruitful Soil. This level was near two Miles in length, and of an unknown breadth, quite out of Danger of being overflow'd, which is a misfortune most of the Low Grounds are liable to in those Parts. As we marcht along we saw many Buffalo-Tracks, and abundance of their Dung very Fresh, but could not have the pleasure of seeing them. They either Smelt us out, having that sense very Quick, or else were alarm'd at the Noise that so many People must necessarily make in marching along. At the Sight of a Man they will Snort and Grunt, cock up their ridiculous Short Tails, and tear up the Ground with a Sort of Timorous Fury.

These wild Cattle hardly ever range alone, but herd together like those that are tame. They are Seldom seen so far North as 40° of latitude, delighting much in canes and Reeds, which grow generally more Southerly.

We quarter'd on the Banks of a Creek that the Inhabitants call Tewahominy, or Tuskarooda creek, because one of that

Nation had been kill'd thereabouts, and his Body thrown into the Creek. 1729 Oct.

Our people had the Fortune to kill a Brace of does, one of which we presented to the Carolina-Gentlemen, who were glad to partake of the Bounty of Providence, at the same time that they sincer'd at us for depending upon it.

We hurry'd away the Surveyors about 9 this Morning, who 4 extended the Line 7 Miles and 160 Poles, notwithstanding the Ground was exceedingly uneven. At the Distance of five Miles we forded a Stream to which we gave the Name of Blewing creek, because of the great Number of those Fowls that then frequented it.

About $2\frac{1}{2}$ Miles beyond that, we came upon Sugar-Tree-Creek, so call'd from the many Trees of that kind that grow upon it. By tapping this Tree, in the first Warm weather in February, One may get from 20 to 40 Gallons of Liquor, very sweet to the tast and agreeable to the Stomach. This may be boil'd into molosses first, and afterwards into very good Sugar, allowing about 10 Gallons of the Liquor to make a Pound. There's no doubt, too, that a very fine Spirit may be distill'd from the molosses, at least as good as Rum. The Sugar Tree delights only in Rich Ground, where it grows very tall, and by the Softness and Spunginess of the Wood shou'd be a quick Grower.

Near this Creek we discovered likewise Several Spice-Trees, the Leaves of which are fragrant, and the Berries they bear are black when dry, and of a hot tast, not much unlike Pepper.

The low Grounds upon the creek are very wide, sometimes on one Side, Sometimes on the Other; tho' most commonly upon the Opposite Shore the high-land advances close to the Bank, only on the North-Side of the Line it spreads itself into a great Breadth of rich low Ground on both sides the Creek for four Miles together, as far as this Stream runs into Hico-River, whereof I shall presently make mention.

1729

O&.

One of our Men Spy'd three Buffaloes, but his Piece being loaded only with Goose-shot, he was able to make no effectual Impression on their thick hides; however, this Disappointment was made up by a Brace of Bucks, and as many Wild Turkeys, kill'd by the rest of the company.

Thus Providence was very Bountiful to our Endeavours, never disappointing those that faithfully rely upon it, and pray heartily for their Daily Bread.

- 5 This day we met with such uneven Grounds, and thick Underwoods, that with all our Industry we were able to advance the Line but 4 Miles and 312 Poles. In this small Distance it intersected a large stream four times, which our Indian at first mistook for the South Branch of Roanoke River; but, discovering his Error soon after, he assured us 'twas a River called Hicootomony, or Turkey-Buzzard River, from the great Number of those unfavoury Birds that roost on the tall Trees growing near its banks.

Early in the Afternoon, to our very great surprize, the Commissioners of Carolina acquainted us with their Resolution to return Home. This Declaration of theirs seem'd the more abrupt, because they had not been so kind as to prepare us, by the least Hint, of their Intention to desert us.

We therefore let them understand they Appear'd to us to abandon the Business they came about with too much Precipitation, this being but the 15th day since we came out the last time. But, altho' we were to be so unhappy as to lose the Assistance of their great Abilities, yet we, who were concern'd for Virginia, determin'd by the Grace of God, not to do our Work by Halves, but, all deserted as we were like to be, shou'd think it our duty to push the Line quite to the Mountains; and if their Government should refuse to be bound by so much of the Line as was run without their Commissioners, yet at least it would bind Vir-

ginia, and Stand as a Direction how far his Majesty's Lands extend to the Southward.

1729
Oa.

In short, these Gentlemen were positive, and the most we could agree upon was to Subscribe plats of our work as far as we had Acted together ; tho' at the same time we insisted these Plats should be got ready by Monday Noon at farthest, when we on the Part of Virginia intended, if we were alive, to move forward without farther loss of Time, the Season being then too far advanc'd to admit of any unnecessary or complaisant delays.

We lay still this-day, being Sunday, on the Bank of Hico River, and had only Prayers, our Chaplain not having Spirits enough to preach. The Gentlemen of Carolina assisted not at our Publick Devotions, because they were taken up all the Morning in making a formidable Protest against our Proceeding on the Line without them.

When the Divine Service was over, the Surveyors sat about making the Plats of so much of the Line as we had run this last Campaign. Our pious Friends of Carolina assisted in this work with some Seeming Scruple, pretending it was a Violation of the Sabbath, which we were the more Surpriz'd at, because it happen'd to be the first Qualm of Conscience they had ever been troubled with during the whole journey. They had made no Bones of Staying from Prayers to hammer out an unnecessary Protest, tho' Divine Service was no Sooner over, but an unusual Fit of Godliness made them fancy that finishing the plats, which was now matter of necessity, was a prophanation of the Day. However, the Expediency of losing no time, for us who thought it our duty to finish what we had undertaken, made such a Labour pardonnable.

In the Afternoon, Mr. Fitz William, one of the Commissioners for Virginia, acquainted his Colleagues it was his Opinion, that by his Majesty's Order they could not proceed farther on the Line, but in Conjunction with the Commissioners of Carolina ;

1729 for which reason he intended to retire, the Next Morning, with
Oct. those Gentlemen.

This lookt a little odd in our Brother Commissioner; tho', in Justice to Him, as well as to our Carolina Friends, they stuck by us as long as our good Liquor lasted, and were so kind to us as to drink our good Journey to the Mountains in the last Bottle we had left.

- 7 The Duplicates of the plats cou'd not be drawn fair this day before Noon, when they were countersign'd by the Commissioners of Each Government. Then those of Carolina deliver'd their Protest, which was by this time lickt into form, and sign'd by them all. And we have been so just to them as to set it down at full length in the Appendix, that their Reasons for leaving us may appear in their full Strength.

After having thus adjusted all our Affairs with the Carolina Commissioners, and kindly supply'd them with Bread to carry them back, which they hardly deserv'd at our hands, we took leave both of them and our colleague, Mr. Fitzwilliam.

This Gentleman had stil a Stronger Reason for hurrying him back to Williamsburg, which was, that neither the General Court might lose an able Judge, nor himself a double Salary, not despairing in the least but he shou'd have the whole pay of Commissioner into the Bargain, tho' he did not half the Work. This, to be sure, was relying more on the Interest of his Friends than on the Justice of his cause; in which, however, he had the misfortune to miscarry, when it came to be fairly considered.

It was two a clock in the Afternoon before these arduous Affairs could be despatcht, and then, all forsaken as we were, we held on our course towards the West. But it was our misfortune to meet with so many Thickets in this Afternoon's Work, that we cou'd advance no further than 2 Miles and 260 Poles.

In this small Distance we cross'd the Hico the fifth time, and

Quarter'd near Buffalo-Creek, so nam'd from the frequent Towns we discover'd of that American Behemoth.

1729
O^ct. .

Here the Bushes were so intolerably thick, that we were oblig'd to cover the Bread Bags with our Deer Skins, otherwise the Joke of one of the Indians must have happen'd to us in good Earnest, that in a few days We must cut up our House to make Bags for the Bread, and so be forc'd to expose our Backs in compliment to our Bellys.

We computed we had then Bisquet enough left to last us, with good Management, Seven Weeks longer ; And this being our chief Dependence, it import'd us to be very careful both in the Carriage and the Distribution of it.

We had no other Drink but what Adam drank in Paradise, tho' to our comfort we found the Water excellent, by the Help of which we perceiv'd our Appetites to Mend, our Slumbers to Sweeten, the Stream of Life to run cool and peaceably in our Veins, and if ever we dreamt of Women, they were kind.

Our men kill'd a very fat Buck and Several Turkeys. These two kinds of Meat boil'd together, with the Addition of a little Rice or French Barley, made excellent Soupe, and, what happens rarely in Other good things, it never cloy'd, no more than an Engaging Wife wou'd do, by being a Constant Dish.

Our Indian was very Superstitious in this Matter, and told us, with a face full of concern, that if we continued to boil Venison and Turkey together, we Shou'd for the future kill nothing, because the Spirit that presid'd over the Woods would drive all the Game out of our Sight. But we had the Happiness to find this an Idle Superstition, and tho' his Argument could not convince us, yet our repeated Experience at last, with much ado, convinc'd Him.

We observ'd abundance of Colt's foot and Maiden-hair in many Places, and no where a larger Quantity than here. They


1729
Oct.

are both Excellent Pectoral Plants, and seem to have greater Vertues much in this part of the World than in more Northern climates; and I believe it may pass for a Rule in Botanicks, that where any Vegetable is planted by the hand of Nature, it has more Vertue than in Places whereto it is transplanted by the Curiosity of Man.

8 Notwithstanding we hurry'd away the Surveyors very early, yet the Underwoods embarrass'd them so much that they cou'd with Difficulty advance the Line 4 Miles and 20 Poles.

Our Cloaths Suffer'd extremely by the Bushes, and it was really as much as both our hands could do to preserve our Eyes in our Heads. Our poor Horses, too, could hardly drag their Loads thro' the Saplings, which stood so close together that it was necessary for them to draw and carry at the same time.

We quarter'd near a Spring of very fine Water, Soft as oyl and as cold as Ice, to make us amends for the want of Wine. And our Indian knockt down a very fat Doe, just time enough to hinder us from going Supperless to Bed.

 The heavy Baggage cou'd not come up with us, because of the Excessive badness of the Ways. This gave us no Small uneasiness, but it went worse with the poor men that guarded it. They had nothing in the World with them but dry Bread, nor durst they eat any of that, for fear of inflaming their Thirst, in a Place where they could find no Water to quench it.

This was, however, the better to be endured, because it was the first Fast any one had kept during the whole Journey, and then, Thanks to the gracious Guardian of the Woods! there was no more than a Single Meal lost to a few of the Company.

We were entertain'd this Night with the Yell of a whole Family of Wolves, in which we cou'd distinguish the Treble, Tenor and Bass, very clearly. These Beasts of Prey kept pretty much upon our Track, being tempted by the Garbage of

the Creatures we kill'd every day ; for which we were Serenaded with their Shrill Pipes almost every Night. This Beast is not so untameable as the Panther, but the Indians know how to gentle their Whelps, and use them about their cabans instead of Dogs. 1729
O&A.

The Thickets were hereabouts so impenetrable, that we were obliged, at first setting off this Morning, to order four Pioneers to clear the way before the Surveyors. But after about 2 Miles of these rough-woods, we had the Pleasure to meet with Open Grounds and not very uneven, by the help of which we were enabled to push the Line about 6 Miles.

The Baggage that lay Short of our camp last Night came up about Noon, and the Men made heavy Complaints, that they had been half Starv'd, like Tantalus, in the midst of plenty, for the Reason above mention'd.

The Soil we pass'd over this Day was generally very good, being cloath'd with large Trees, of Poplar, Hickory, and Oak. But another certain Token of its Fertility was, that wild Angelica grew plentifully upon it.

The Root of this Plant, being very warm and Aromatick, is coveted by Woodsmen extremely as a dry Dram, that is, when Rum, that cordial for all Distresses, is wanting.

Several Deer came into our View as we march'd along, but none into the Pot, which made it necessary for us to sup on the Fragments we had been so provident as to carry along with us. This being but a temperate Repast, made some of our hungry Fellows call the Place we lodg'd at that Night, Bread and Water Camp.

A great Flock of Cranes flew over our Quarters, that were exceeding Clamorous in their Flight. They seem to steer their Course towards the South (being Birds of Passage) in Quest of Warmer Weather. They only took this Country in their way,

1729 being as rarely met with, in this part of the World, as a High-
O&A. wayman or a Beggar.

These Birds travel generally in Flocks, and when they roost they place Sentinels upon some of the highest Trees, which constantly stand upon one leg to keep themselves waking.¹

Our Indian kill'd nothing all day but a Mountain Partridge, which a little resembled the common Partridge in the Plumage, but was near as large as a Dunghill Hen. These are very frequent towards the Mountains, tho' we had the fortune to meet with very few. They are apt to be Shy, and consequently the Noise of so great a Number of People might easily Scare them away from our Sight.

We found what we conceiv'd to be Good Limestone in several Places, and a great Quantity of Blue Slate.

10 The day began very fortunately by killing a Fat Doe, and Two Brace of wild Turkeys; so the Plenty of the Morning made amends for the Short Commons over Night. One of the new men we brought out with us the last time was unfortunately heard to wish himself at Home, and for that Shew of Impatience was publickly reprimanded at the Head of the men, who were all drawn up to witness his Disgrace.

He was askt how he came so soon to be tired of the Company of so many brave Fellows, and whether it was the Danger or

¹ Nor are these Birds the only Animals that appoint Scouts to keep the main Body from being surpriz'd. For the Baboons, whenever they go upon any mischievous Expedition, such as robbing an Orchard, they place centinels to look out towards every Point of the Compass, and give notice of any danger. Then ranking themselves in one File, that reaches from the mountain where they harbour, to the Orchard they intend to rob, some of them toss the Fruits from the Trees to those that stand nearest, these throw them to the next, and so from one to tother, til the fruit is all secured in a few Minutes out of Harm's way. In the mean time, if any of the Scouts should be careless at their Posts & Suffer any Surprise, they are torn to pieces without Mercy. In case of danger these centinels Set up a fearful cry, upon which the rest take the alarm, and Scour away to the Mountains as fast as they can.

the Fatigue of the Journey that dishearten'd Him? This publick Reproof from thenceforward put an effectual Stop to all complaints, and not a man amongst us after that pretended so much as to wish himself in Paradise. 1729
Oct.

A Small Distance from our Camp we cross'd a pleasant Stream of Water call'd Cocquade Creek, and something more than a Mile from thence our Line intersected the South Branch of Roanoak River the first time, which we call'd the Dan. It was about 200 Yards wide where we forded it, and when we came over to the West Side, we found the Banks lin'd with a Forest of Tall canes, that grew more than a furlong in depth. So that it cost us abundance of time and Labour to cut a Passage thro' them wide enough for our Baggage.

In the mean time we had leizure to take a full view of this charming River. The Stream, which was perfectly clear, ran down about two Knots, or two Miles, an Hour, when the water was at the lowest. The Bottom was cover'd with a coarse Gravel, Spangled very thick with a Shining Substance, that almost dazzled the eye, and the Sand upon either Shore Sparkled with the same Splendid Particles.

At first Sight, the Sun-Beams giving a Yellow cast to these Spangles made us fancy them to be Gold-Dust, and consequently that all our Fortunes were made. Such Hopes as these were the less extravagant, because several Rivers lying much about the Same Latitude with this have formerly abounded with Fragments of that tempting Metal. Witness the Tagus in Portugal, the Heber in Thrace, and the Pactolus in Lesser Asia; Not to mention the Rivers on the Gold Coast in Africa, which ly in a more Southern Climate.

But we soon found our Selves mistaken, and our Gold Dust dwindled into small Flakes of isingglass. However, tho' this did not make the River so rich as we cou'd wish, yet it made it exceedingly Beautiful.

1729
Oct. We marcht about two Miles and a half beyond this River, as far as Cane Creek, so call'd from a Prodigious Quantity of tall canes that fring'd the Banks of it.

On the West side of this Creek we markt out our Quarters, and were glad to find our Horses fond of the canes, tho' they Scowred them smartly at first, and discolor'd their Dung. This beautiful Vegetable grows commonly from 12 to 16 feet High, and some of them as thick as a Man's wrist.

Tho' these appear'd large to us, yet they are no more than Spires of Grass, if compar'd to those which some curious Travelers tell us grow in the East Indies, one Joint of which will make a Brace of Canoes, if saw'd in two in the Middle. Ours continue green thro' all the Seasons during the Space of Six Years, and the Seventh shed their Seed, wither away and Die. The Spring following they begin to Shoot again, and reach their former Stature the Second or third Year after.

They grow so thick, and their Roots lace together so firmly, that they are the best Guard that can be of the River-Bank, which wou'd otherwise be washt away by the frequent Inundations that happen in this part of the World.

They would also serve excellently well to plant on the Borders of Fish-Ponds and Canals, to secure their sides from falling in; tho' I fear they would not grow kindly in a cold Country, being seldom seen here so Northerly as 38 Degrees of Latitude.

II At the Distance of 4 Miles and 60 Poles from the Place where we encampt, we came upon the River Dan a Second time; tho' It was not so wide in this Place as where we cross't it first, being not above a 150 yards over.

The West Shore continued to be cover'd with the Canes above mention'd, but not to so great a Breadth as before, and 'tis Remarkable that these canes are much more frequent on the West Side of the River than on the East, where they grow generally very scattering.

It was Still a beautiful Stream, rolling down its limpid and murmuring waters among the Rocks, which lay scatter'd here and there, to make up the variety of the Prospect. 1729
Oct.

It was about two Miles from this River to the End of our Day's Work, which led us mostly over Broken Grounds and troublesome Underwoods. Hereabout, from one of the Highest hills, we made the first Discovery of the Mountains, on the North-west of our course. They seem'd to lye off at a vast Distance, and lookt like Ranges of Blue clouds rising one above another.

We encamp't about two Miles beyond the River, where we made good cheer upon a very fat Buck, that luckily fell in our way. The Indian likewise Shot a Wild Turkey, but confess't he wou'd not bring it us, lest we shou'd continue to provoke the Guardian of the Forrest, by cooking the Beasts of the Field and the Birds of the Air together in one vessel.

This Instance of Indian Superstition, I confess, is countenanced in some measure by the Levitical Law, which forbad the mixing of things of a Different Nature together in the Same field, or in the Same Garment, and why not then in the same Kettle?

But, after all, if the Jumbleing of two Sorts of Flesh together be a Sin, how intolerable an Offence must it be to make a Spanish Ole, that is, a Hotchpotch of every kind of thing that is eatable? And the good People of England wou'd have a great deal to answer for, for beating up so many different Ingredients into a Pudding.

We were so cruelly intangled with Bushes and Grape-Vines 12 all day, that we could advance the Line no farther than 5 Miles and 28 Poles.

The Vines grow very thick in these Woods, twineing lovingly round the Trees almost every where, especially to the Saplings. This makes it evident how Natural both the Soil and Climate

1729 of this Country are to Vines, tho' I believe most to our own
O&. Vines.

The Grapes we commonly met with were black, tho' there be two or three kinds of White Grapes that grow wild. The Black are very Sweet, but Small, because the Strength of the Vine spends itself in Wood; tho' without Question a proper Culture would make the same Grapes both larger and Sweeter. But, with all these Disadvantages, I have Drunk tolerable good Wine prest from them, tho' made without Skill. There is then good Reason to believe it might Admit of great Improvement, if rightly managed.

Our Indian kill'd a Bear, of two years old, that was feasting on these Grapes. He was very fat, as they generally are in that season of the year. In the fall, the Flesh of this Animal has a high Relish, different from that of other Creatures, tho' inclining nearest to that of Pork, or rather of Wild Boar.

A true Woodsman prefers this Sort of meat to that of the fattest Venison, not only for the *Haut-gout*, but also because the Fat of it is well tasted, and never rises in the stomach. Another proof of the goodness of this meat is, that it is less apt to corrupt than any other we are acquainted with. As agreeable as such rich Diet was to the men, yet we who were not accusom'd to it, tasted it at first with some sort of Squeamishness, that Animal being of the Dog-kind; tho' a little Use soon reconcil'd us to this American Venison. And that its being of the Dog kind might give us the less disgust, we had the Example of that Ancient and polite People, the Chinese, who reckon Dog's Flesh too good for any under the Quality of a mandarin.

This Beast is in truth a very clean Feeder, living, while the Season lasts, upon Acorns, Chesnuts and Chinkapins, Wild-Hony and Wild-Grapes. They are naturally not carnivorous, unless Hunger constrain them to it, after the Mast is all gone, and the Products of the Woods quite exhausted.

They are not provident enough to lay up any Hoard, like the Squirrels, nor can they, after all, live very long upon licking their Paws, as Sr John Mandevil and some Travellers tell us, but are forc'd in the Winter Months to quit the Mountains, and visit the Inhabitants.

Their Errand is then to Surprise a poor Hog at a Pinch to keep them from Starving. And to shew that they are not Flesh-Eaters by Trade, they devour their Prey very awkwardly.

They don't kill it right out, and feast upon its Blood and Entrails, like other ravenous Beasts, but having, after a fair pursuit, seiz'd it with their Paws, they begin first upon the Rump, and so devour one collop after another, till they come to the Vitals, the poor Animal crying all the while, for several Minutes together. However, in so doing, Bruin acts a little imprudently, because, the dismal outcry of the Hog alarms the Neighbourhood, and 'tis odds but he pays the forfeit with his Life, before he can Secure his Retreat.

But Bears soon grow weary of this unnatural Diet, and about January, when there is nothing to be got in the Woods, they retire into some cave or hollow Tree, where they Sleep away two or three Months very comfortably. But then they quit their Holes in March, when the Fish begin to run up the Rivers, on which they are forc'd to keep Lent, till some Fruit or Berry comes in Season.

But Bears are fondest of chesnuts, which grow plentifully towards the Mountains, upon very large Trees, where the Soil happens to be rich. We were curious to know how it happen'd that many of the outward Branches of those Trees came to be brok off in that Solitary Place, and were inform'd that the Bears are so discreet as not to trust their unwieldy Bodies on the Smaller Limbs of the Tree, that would not bear their weight; but after venturing as far as is safe, which they can judge to an Inch, they bite off the End of the Branch, which falling down, they are

1729
Oct.

content to finish their Repast upon the Ground. In the same Cautious Manner they secure the Acorns that grow on the weaker Limbs of the Oak. And it must be allow'd that, in these Instances, a Bear carries Instinct a great way, and Acts more reasonably than many of his Betters, who indiscreetly Venture upon frail Projects that wont bear them.

- 13 This being Sunday, we rested from our Fatigue, and had leisure to reflect on the signal Mercies of Providence.

The great Plenty of Meat wherewith Bearskin furnisht us in these lonely Woods made us once more Shorten the men's allowance of Bread, from 5 to 4 Pounds of bisket a week. This was the more necessary, because we knew not yet how long our Business might require us to be out.

In the Afternoon our Hunters went forth, and return'd triumphantly with three brace of wild Turkeys. They told us they cou'd see the Mountains distinctly from every Eminence, tho' the Atmosphere was so thick with Smoak that they appear'd at a greater Distance than they really were.

In the Evening we examin'd our Friend Bearskin, concerning the Religion of his Country, and he explain'd it to us, without any of that Reserve to which his Nation is Subject.

He told us he believ'd there was one Supreme God, who had Several Subaltern Deities under Him. And that this Master-God made the World a long time ago. That he told the Sun, the Moon, and Stars, their Business in the Beginning, which they, with good looking after, have faithfully perform'd ever Since.

That the same Power that made all things at first has taken care to keep them in the same Method and Motion ever since.

He believ'd God had form'd many Worlds before he form'd this, but that those Worlds either grew old and ruinous, or were destroyed for the Dishonesty of the Inhabitants.

That God is very just and very good—ever well pleas'd with those men who possess those God-like Qualities. That he takes good People into his safe Protection, makes them very rich, fills their Bellies plentifully, preserves them from sickness, and from being surpriz'd or Overcome by their Enemies. 1729
Oct.

But all such as tell Lies, and Cheat those they have Dealings with, he never fails to punish with Sickness, Poverty and Hunger, and, after all that, Suffers them to be knockt on the Head and scalp't by those that fight against them.

He believ'd that after Death both good and bad People are conducted by a strong Guard into a great Road, in which departed Souls travel together for some time, till at a certain Distance this Road forks into two Paths, the one extremely Levil, and the other Stony and Mountainous.

Here the good are parted from the Bad by a flash of Lightning, the first being hurry'd away to the Right, the other to the Left. The Right hand Road leads to a charming warm Country, where the Spring is everlasting, and every Month is May; and as the year is always in its Youth, so are the People, and particularly the Women are bright as Stars, and never Scold.

That in this happy Climate there are Deer, Turkeys, Elks, and Buffaloes innumerable, perpetually fat and gentle, while the Trees are loaded with delicious Fruit quite throughout the four Seasons.

That the Soil brings forth Corn Spontaneously, without the Curse of Labour, and so very wholesome, that None who have the happiness to eat of it are ever Sick, grow old, or dy.

Near the Entrance into this Blessed Land Sits a Venerable Old Man on a Mat richly woven, who examines Strictly all that are brought before Him, and if they have behav'd well, the Guards are order'd to open the Crystal Gate, and let them enter into the Land of Delights.

1729
Oct.

The left Hand Path is very rugged and uneven, leading to a dark and barren Country, where it is always Winter. The Ground is the whole year round cover'd with Snow, and nothing is to be seen upon the Trees but Icicles.

All the People are hungry, yet have not a Morfel of any thing to eat, except a bitter kind of Potato, that gives them the Dry-Gripes, and fills their whole Body with loathsome Ulcers, that Stink, and are insupportably painfull.

Here all the Women are old and ugly, having Claws like a Panther, with which they fly upon the Men that Slight their Passion. For it seems these haggard old Furies are intolerably fond, and expect a vast deal of Cherishing. They talk much, and exceedingly Shrill, giving exquisite Pain to the Drum of the Ear, which in that Place of the Torment is so tender, that every Sharp Note wounds it to the Quick.

At the End of this Path sits a dreadful Old Woman on a monstrous Toad-Stool, whose head is cover'd with Rattle-Snakes instead of Tressès, with glaring white Eyes, that strike a Terror unspeakable into all that behold her.

This Hag pronounces Sentence of Woe upon all the miserable Wretches that hold up their hands at her Tribunal. After this they are deliver'd over to huge Turkey-Buzzards, like harpys, that fly away with them to the Place above mentioned.

Here, after they have been tormented a certain Number of years, according to their several Degrees of Guilt, they are again driven back into this World, to try if they will mend their Manners, and merit a place the next time in the Regions of Bliss.

This was the Substance of Bearskin's Religion, and was as much to the purpose as cou'd be expected from a meer State of Nature, without one Glimps of Revelation or Philosophy.

It contain'd, however, the three Great Articles of Natural Religion : The Belief of a God ; The Moral Distinction betwixt Good and Evil ; and the Expectation of Rewards and Punishments in Another World. 1729
Oct.

Indeed, the Indian Notion of a Future Happiness is a little Gross and Sensual, like Mahomet's Paradise. But how can it be otherwise, in a People that are contented with Nature as they find Her, and have no other Lights but what they receive from purblind Tradition?

There having been great Signs of Rain yesterday Evening, 14 we had taken our Precautions in Securing the Bread, and trenching in our Tent.

The men had also Stretcht their Blankets upon Poles, Pent-house fashion, against the Weather, so that nobody was taken unprepar'd.

It began to fall heavily about three a'clock in the Morning, and held not up till near Noon. Every thing was so thoroughly Soakt, that we laid aside all thoughts of decamping that Day.

This gave leizure to the most expert of our Gunners to go and try their Fortunes, and they succeeded so well, that they return'd about Noon with three fat Deer, and 4 wild Turkeys. Thus Providence took care of us, and however short the Men might be in their Bread, 'tis certain they had Meat at full Allowance.

The Cookery went on merrily all Night long, to keep the Damps from entering our Pores ; and in truth the Impressions of the Air are much more powerfull upon empty Stomachs.

In such a Glut of Provisions, a true Woodsman, when he has nothing else to do, like our honest countrymen the Indians, keeps eating on, to avoid the imputation of Idleness ; Though, in a Scarcity, the Indian will fast with a much better Grace than they. They can Subsist Several days upon a little Rockahominy, which is parcht Indian Corn reduc'd to powder. This they

1729
Oct.

moisten in the hollow of their Hands with a little water, and 'tis hardly credible how small a Quantity of it will Support them. 'Tis true they grow a little lank upon it, but to make themselves feel full, they gird up their Loins very tight with a Belt, taking up a Hole every day. With this Slender Subsistence they are able to travel very long Journeys; but then, to make themselves Amends, when they do meet with better Chear, they eat without ceasing, till they have raven'd themselves into another Famine.

This was the first time we had ever been detain'd a whole day in our camp by the Rain, and therefore had Reason to bear it with the more patience.

As I sat in the Tent I overheard a learn'd conversation between one of our men and the Indian. He ask't the Englishman what it was that made that rumbling noise when it thunder'd?

The man told him merrily, that the God of the English was firing his great Guns upon the God of the Indians, which made all the roaring in the clouds, and that the Lightening was only the Flash of those Guns.

The Indian carrying on the Humour reply'd very gravely, He believed that might be the case indeed, and that the Rain which follow'd upon the Thunder must be occasion'd by the Indian God's being so scar'd he could not hold his Water.

The few good Husbands amongst us took some thought of their Backs as well as their Bellies, and made use of this Opportunity to put their Habiliments in repair, which had Suffer'd woefully by the Bushes.

The Horses got some rest, by reason of the bad weather, but very little Food, the chief of their Forage being a little wild Rosemary, which resembles the Garden Rosemary pretty much in Figure, but not at all in taste or smell. This Plant grows in small Tufts here and there on the Barren Land in these upper

Parts, and the Horses liked it well, but the misfortune was, they cou'd not get enough of it to fill their Bellies.

1729
Oct.

After the Clouds brake away in the Morning, the People dried their Blankets with all diligence. Nevertheless, it was Noon before we were in condition to move forward, and then were so puzzled with passing the river twice in a Small Distance, that we could advance the Line in all no farther than One Single Mile and 300 Poles.

15

The first time we past the Dan this day was 240 Poles from the Place where we lay, and the Second time was one Mile and Seven Poles beyond that. This was now the fourth time we forded that fine River, which still tended westerly, with many Short and returning Reaches.

The Surveyors had much Difficulty in getting over the River, finding it deeper than formerly. The Breadth of it here did not exceed fifty Yards. The Banks were about 20 feet high from the Water, and beautifully beset with canes.

Our Baggage Horses crost not the River here at all, but, fetching a compass, went round the Bent of it. On our Way we forded Sable-Creek, so call'd from the Dark Colour of the Water, which happen'd, I suppose, by its being Shaded on both Sides with canes.

In the Evening we quarter'd in a Charming Situation near the angle of the River, from whence our Eyes were carried down both Reaches, which kept a Straight Course for a great way together.

This Prospect was so beautiful, that we were perpetually climbing up to a Neighbouring eminence, that we might enjoy it in more Perfection.

Now the Weather grew cool, the Wild Geese began to direct their Flight this way from Hudson's Bay, and the Lakes that lay North-west of us.

They are very lean at their first coming, but fatten soon upon

1729 a Sort of Grafs that grows on the Shores and Rocks of this
O&· River.

The Indians call this Fowl Cohunks, from the hoarse Note it has, and begin the year from the Coming of the Cohunks, which happens in the Beginning of October.

These Wild Geese are guarded from cold by a Down, that is exquisitely soft and fine, which makes them much more valuable for their Feathers than for their Flesh, which is dark and coarse.

The Men chast a Bear into the River that got safe over, notwithstanding the continual fire from the Shore upon Him. He Seem'd to Swim but heavily, considering it was for his Life.

Where the Water is Shallow, 'tis no Uncommon thing to see a Bear sitting, in the Summer time, on a heap of Gravel in the Middle of the River, not only to cool himself, but likewise for the Advantage of Fishing, particularly for a small Shell-fish, that is brought down with the Stream.

In the upper part of James River I have observed this Several times, and wonder'd very much, at first, how so many heaps of small Stones came to be piled up in the Water, till at last we spy'd a Bear Sitting upon one of them, looking with great attention on the Stream, and rakeing up Something with his Paw, which I take to be the Shell-fish above mention'd.

16 It was Ten a'clock this Morning before the Horses cou'd be found, having hidden themselves among the canes, whereof there was great plenty just at hand. Not far from our camp we went over a Brook, whose Banks were edg'd on both Sides with these canes. But three Miles further we forded a larger Stream, which we call'd Low Land Creek, by reason of the great Breadth of Low Grounds inclos'd between that and the River.

The high Land we travell'd over was very good, and the low Grounds promis'd the greatest Fertility of any I had ever seen.

At the End of 4 Miles and 311 Poles from where we lay, the Line intersected the Dan the fifth time. We had day enough

to carry it farther, but the Surveyors cou'd find no Safe ford over the River.

1729
Oct.

This oblig'd us to ride two Miles up the River in quest of a Ford, and by the way we travers'd Several Small Indian Fields, where we conjectur'd the SAWRO'S had been us'd to plant Corn, the Town where they had liv'd lying Seven or Eight Miles more Southerly, upon the Eastern Side of the River.

These Indian Fields produc'd a Sweet kind of Grass, Almost knee-high, which was excellent Forage for the Horses.

It must be observ'd, by the way, that Indian Towns, like Religious Houses, are remarkabler for a fruitful Situation; for being by Nature not very Industrious, they choose such a Situation as will Subsist them with the least Labour.

The Trees grew Surprisingly large in this low-Ground, and amongst the rest we observ'd a tall kind of hiccory, peculiar to the Upper Parts of the Country. It is cover'd with a very rough Bark, and produces a Nut with a thick Shell that is easily broken. The Kernel is not so rank as that of the Common Hiccory, but altogether as oily.

And now I am upon the Subject of these Nuts, it may not be improper to remark, that a very great benefit might be made of Nut-Oyl in this Colony. The Walnuts, the Hiccory-Nuts, and Pig-nuts, contain a vast deal of Oyl, that might be press'd out in great abundance with proper Machines.

The Trees grow very kindly, and may be easily propagated. They bear plenty of Nuts every year, that are now of no other use in the World but to feed Hogs. 'Tis certain there is a large Consumption of this Oyl in Several of our Manufactures, and in some parts of France, as well as in other Countries, it is eaten instead of Oyl-Olive, being tolerably Sweet and wholesome.

The Indian kill'd a fat Buck, and the men brought in four Bears and a Brace of wild Turkeys, so that this was truly a Land of Plenty, both for man and Beast.

1729 We detach a Party of men this morning early in Search of
 Oct. a Ford, who after all cou'd find None that was safe; tho' dangerous as it was, we determin'd to make use of it, to avoid all
 17 further delay. Accordingly we rode over a Narrow Ledge of Rocks, Some of which lay below the Surface of the Water, and some above it.

Those that lay under the Water were as Slippery as Ice; and the Current glided over them so swiftly, that tho' it was only Water, it made us perfectly drunk. Yet we were all so fortunate as to get safe over to the West Shore, with no other Damage than the Sopping some of our Bread by the flouncing of the Horses.

The tedious time Spent in finding out this Ford, and in getting all the Horses over it, prevented our carrying the Line more than 2 Miles and 250 Poles.

This was the last time we crost the Dan with our Line, which now began to run away more Southerly, with a very flush and plentiful Stream, the Description whereof must be left to future Discoveries, tho' we are well assured by the Indians that it runs thro' the Mountains.

We conducted the Baggage a roundabout way for the Benefit of evener Grounds, and this carry'd us over a broad Levil of exceeding rich Land, full of large Trees, with Vines marry'd to them, if I may be allow'd to speak so Poetically.

We untreed a young Cub in our March, that made a brave Stand against one of the best of our Dogs. This and a Fawn were all the Game that came in our way.

In this day's Journey, as in many others before, we saw beautiful Marble of Several Colours, and particularly that of the Purple kind with white Streaks, and in some places we came across large pieces of pure Alabaster.

We markt out our Quarters on the Banks of a purling Stream, which we call'd Casquade Creek, by reason of the Mul

itude of Water-Falls that are in it. But, different from all other Falls that ever I met with, the Rocks over which the water roll'd were Soft, and would Split easily into broad Flakes, very proper for Pavement; and some Fragments of it seem'd soft enough for Hones; and the Grain fine enough.

1729
Oct.

Near our Camp we found a prickly Shrub, rising about a foot from the Ground, something like that which bears the Barberry, tho' much Smaller. The Leaves had a fresh, agreeable Smell, and I am perswaded the Ladies would be apt to fancy a Tea made of them, provided they were told how far it came, and at the Same time were obliged to buy it very dear.

About a Mile to the South-west of our Camp rose a regular Mount, that commanded a full Prospect of the Mountains, and an Extensive View of the Flat Country. But being, with respect to the high Mountains, no more than a Pimple, we call'd it by that Name.

Presently after Sunset we discovered a great Light towards the West, too bright for a fire, and more resembling the Aurora Borealis. This, all our Woodsmen told us, was a Common Appearance in the High Lands, and generally foreboded bad Weather. Their Explanation happen'd to be exactly true, for in the Night we had a Violent Gale of Wind, accompany'd with Smart Hail, that rattled frightfully amongst the Trees, tho' it was not large enough to do us any Harm.

We crost Casquade Creek over a Ledge of Smooth Rocks, and then Scuffled thro' a mighty Thicket, at least three Miles long. The whole was one continued Tract of rich high Land, the woods whereof had been burnt not long before. It was then overgrown with Saplings of Oak, Hickory and Locust, interlac'd with Grape Vines. In this fine Land, however, we met with no Water, till at the End of three Miles we luckily came upon a Chrystal Stream, which, like some Lovers of Con-

1729
Oct. } versation, discover'd every thing committed to its faithless
Bosom.

Then we came upon a piece of Rich Low Ground, covered with large Trees, of the extent of half a Mile, which made us fancy ourselves not far from the River; tho' after that we ascended gently to higher Land, with no other Trees growing upon it except Butter-wood, which is one Species of White Maple.

This being a dead Level, without the least Declivity to carry off the Water, was moist in many Places, and produc'd abundance of Grass. All our Woodsmen call these flat Grounds High-Land-Ponds, and in their Trading Journeys are glad to halt at such Places for Several days together, to recruit their Jaded Horses, especially in the Winter Months, when there is little or no Grass to be found in other Places.

This High-Land-Pond extended above two Miles, our Paltry's Snatching greedily at the Tufts of Grass, as they went along. After we got over this Level, we descended some Stony Hills for about half a Mile, and then came upon a large Branch of the River, which we christen'd the Irvin, in honour of our learned Professor. This River we forded with much Difficulty and some Danger, by reason of the Hollow-Spaces betwixt the Rocks, into which our Horses plunged almost every Step.

The Irvin runs into the Dan about four miles to the Southward of the Line, and seem'd to roll down its Waters from the N.N.W. in a very full and Limpid stream, and the Murmur it made, in tumbling over the Rocks, caus'd the Situation to appear very Romantick, and had almost made some of the Company Poetical, tho' they drank nothing but Water.

We encamp't on a pleasant Hill, overlooking the River, which seem'd to be deep every where except just where we forded. In the mean time, neither that Chain of Rocks, nor any

other that we cou'd observe in this Stream, was so uninterrupted, but that there were Several Breaks where a Canoe, or even a Moderate Flat-bottom'd Boat, might Shear clear. Nor have we reason to believe there are any other Falls (except the great ones, thirty Miles below Moniseep-Ford) that reach quite across, so as to interrupt the Navigation for Small Craft. And I have been inform'd that, even at those Great Falls, the Blowing up a few Rocks wou'd open a Passage at least for canoes, which certainly wou'd be an unspeakable Convenience to the Inhabitants of all that beautiful Part of the Country.

1729
Oct.

The Indian kill'd a very fat Doe, and came across a Bear, which had been put to Death and was half devour'd by a Panther. The last of these Brutes reigns absolute Monarch of the Woods, and in the keenness of his hunger will venture to attack a Bear; tho' then 'tis ever by surprize, as all Beasts of the cat kind use to come upon their Prey.

Their Play is to take the poor Bears napping, they being very drowsy Animals, and tho' they be exceedingly Strong, yet their Strength is heavy, while the Panthers are too Nimble and cunning to trust themselves within their Hugg.

As formidable as this Beast is to his Fellow Brutes, he never has the confidence to venture upon a Man, but retires from him with great respect, if there be a way open for his Escape. However, it must be confess'd, his Voice is a little contemptible for a Monarch of the Forrest, being not a great deal louder nor more awful than the Mewing of a Household Cat.¹

In South Carolina they call this Beast a Tyger, tho' impro-

¹ Some Authors, who have given an Account of the Southern Continent of America, wou'd make the World believe there are Lyons; but in all likelihood they were mistaken, imagining these Panthers to be Lyons. What makes this probable is, that the Northern and Southern Parts of America being join'd by the Isthmus of Darien, if there were Lyons in either they would find their way into the other, the Latitudes of each being equally proper for that generous animal.

1729
O&. } perly, and so they do in some parts of the Spanish West Indies. Some of their Authors, a little more properly, complement it with the Name of a Leopard. But none of these are the Growth of America, that we know of.

The whole Distance the Surveyors advanc'd the Line this day amounted to 6 Miles and 30 Poles, which was no small Journey, considering the Grounds we had travest were exceedingly rough and uneven, and in many Places intolerably entangled with Bushes. All the Hills we ascended were encumber'd with Stones, many of which seem'd to contain a Metallick Substance, and the Vallies we crost were interrupted with Miry Branches. From the Top of every Hill we cou'd discern distinctly, at a great Distance to the Northward, three or four Ledges of Mountains, rising one above another; and on the higheft of all rose a Single Mountain, very much resembling a Woman's Breast.

- 19 About four Miles beyond the River Irvin, we forded Matrimony Creek, call'd so by an unfortunate marry'd man, because it was exceedingly noisy and impetuous. However, tho' the Stream was Clamorous, yet, like those Women who make themselves plainest heard, it was likewise perfectly clear and unsully'd.

Still half a Mile further we saw a Small Mountain, about five Miles to the North-west of us, which we call'd the Wart, because it appear'd no bigger than a Wart, in Comparison of the great Mountains which hid their haughty Heads in the Clouds.

We were not able to extend the Line farther than 5 Miles and 135 Poles, notwithstanding we began our March Early in the Morning, and did not encamp till it was almost dark.

We made it the later by endeavouring to Quarter in some convenient Situation, either for Grass or Canes. But Night

Surprising us, we were oblig'd to Lodge at last upon High and uneven Ground, which was so overgrown with Shrubs and Saplings, that we cou'd hardly see ten yards around us. 1729
Oct.

The most melancholy part of the Story was, that our Horses had Short Commons. The poor Creatures were now grown so weak that they Stagger'd when we mounted them. Nor wou'd our own Fare have been at all more plentiful, had we not been so provident as to carry a Load of Meat along with us. Indeed, the Woods were too thick to shew us any sort of Game but one Wild Turkey, which help'd to enrich our Soup.

To make us amends, we found abundance of very Sweet Grapes, which, with the help of Bread, might have furnish'd out a good Italian Repast, in the Absence of more Savoury Food.

The men's Mouths water'd at the Sight of a Prodigious Flight of Wild Pigeons, which flew high over our Heads to the Southward.

The Flocks of these Birds of Passage are so amazingly great, Sometimes, that they darken the Sky; nor is it uncommon for them to light in such Numbers on the Larger Limbs of Mulberry-Trees and Oaks as to break them down.

In their Travels they make vast Havock amongst the Acorns and Berries of all Sorts, that they waste whole Forrests in a short time, and leave a Famine behind them for most other Creatures; and under Some Trees where they light, it is no Strange thing to find the ground cover'd three Inches thick with their Dung. These Wild Pigeons commonly breed in the uninhabited parts of Canada, and as the Cold approaches assemble their Armies and bend their Course Southerly, Shifting their Quarters, like many of the Winged kind, according to the Season. But the most remarkable thing in their Flight, as we are told, is that they never have been observ'd to return to the Northern Countries the same way they came from thence, but take quite another Rout, I suppose for their better Subsistence.

1729 In these long Flights they are very lean, and their Flesh is
 Oct. far from being white or tender, tho' good enough upon a March,
 when Hunger is the fauce, and makes it go down better than
 Truffles and Mòrels wou'd do.

20 It was now Sunday, which we had like to have spent in Fast-
 ing as well as Prayer; for our Men, taking no Care for the
 Morrow, like good Christians, but bad Travellers, had improvi-
 dently Devour'd all their Meat for Supper.

They were order'd in the Morning to drive up their Horses,
 lest they shou'd stray too far from the Camp and be lost, in case
 they were let alone all day. At their Return they had the very
 great Comfort to behold a monstrous fat Bear, which the Indian
 had kill'd very Seasonably for their Breakfast.

We thought it still necessary to make another Reduction of
 our Bread, from four to three Pounds a Week to every man,
 computing that we had still enough in that Proportion to last us
 Three weeks longer.

The Atmosphere was so smoaky all round us, that the Moun-
 tains were again grown invifible. This happen'd not from the
 Hazynefs of the Sky, but from the firing of the Woods by the
 Indians, for we were now near the Route the Northern Savages
 take when they go out to War againft the Cataubas and other
 Southern Nations.

On their way the Fires they make in their camps are left
 burning, which, catching the dry Leaves that ly near, soon put
 the adjacent Woods into a flame.

Some of our men in Search of their Horses discovered one of
 those Indian camps, where not long before they had been Fur-
 ring and dressing their Skins.

And now I mention the Northern Indians, it may not be im-
 proper to take Notice of their implacable Hatred to those of the
 South. Their Wars are everlasting, without any Peace, Enmity
 being the only Inheritance among them that descends from Fa-

ther to Son, and either Party will march a thousand Miles to take their Revenge upon such Hereditary Enemies.

1729
Oct.

These long Expeditions are commonly carry'd on in the following Manner ; Some Indian, remarkable for his Prowess, that has rais'd himself to the Reputation of a War-Captain, declares his Intention of paying a Visit to some southern Nation ; Hereupon as many of the Young Fellows as have either a Strong Thirst of Blood or Glory, list themselves under his command.

With these Volunteers he goes from One Confederate Town to another, listng all the Rabble he can, til he has gather'd together a competent Number for Mischief.

Their Arms are a Gun and Tomahawk, and all the Provisions they carry from Home is a Pouch of Rockahominy. Thus provided and accoutr'd, they march towards their Enemy's Country, not in a Body, or by a certain Path, but Straggling in Small Numbers, for the greater convenience of Hunting and passing along undiscover'd.

So soon as they approach the Grounds on which the Enemy is used to hunt, they never kindle any Fire themselves, for fear of being found out by the smoak, nor will they Shoot at any kind of Game, tho' they shou'd be half Famisht, lest they might alarm their Foes, and put them upon their Guard.

Sometimes indeed, while they are still at some distance, they roast either Venison or Bear, till it is very dry, and then having Strung it on their Belts, wear it round their Middle, eating very Sparingly of it, because they know not when they shall meet with a fresh Supply. But coming nearer, they begin to look all round the Hemisphere, to watch if any Smoke ascends, and listen continually for the Report of Guns, in order to make some happy Discovery for their own advantage.

It is amazing to see their Sagacity in discerning the Track of a Human Foot, even amongst dry leaves, which to our Shorter Sight is quite undiscoverable.

1729
Oct.

If by one or more of those Signs they be able to find out the Camp of any Southern Indians, they Squat down in some Thicket, and keep themselves hush and Snug till it is dark ; Then creeping up Softly, they approach near enough to observe all the Motions of the Enemy. And about two a Clock in the Morning, when they conceive them to be in a Profound Sleep, for they never keep Watch and Ward, pour in a Volley upon them, each Singling out his Man. The Moment they have discharg'd their Pieces, they rush in with their Tomahawks, and make sure work of all that are disabled.

Sometimes, when they find the Enemy Asleep around their little Fire, they first Pelt them with little Stones to wake them, and when they get up, fire in upon them, being in that posture a better Mark than when prostrate on the Ground.

Those that are kill'd of the Enemy, or disabled, they Scalp, that is, they cut the Skin all round the Head just below the hair, and then clapping their Feet to the poor Mortal's Shoulders, pull the Scalp off clean, and carry it home in Triumph, being as proud of those Trophies, as the Jews used to be of the Forekins of the Philistines.

This way of Scalping was practis'd by the Ancient Scythians, who us'd these hairy Scalps as Towels at Home, and Trappings for their Horses when they went abroad.

They also made Cups of their Enemies' Skulls, in which they drank Prosperity to their country, and Confusion to all their Foes.

The Prisoners they happen to take alive in these expeditions generally pass their time very Scurvily. They put them to all the Tortures that ingenious Malice and cruelty can invent. And (what shews the baseness of the Indian Temper in Perfection) they never fail to treat those with the greatest Inhumanity that have distinguish'd themselves most by their Bravery ; and, if he be a War-Captain, they do him the Honour to roast him alive, and

distribute a Collop to all that had a Share in Stealing the Victory.¹

1729
Oct.

They are very cunning in finding out new ways to torment their unhappy Captives, tho', like those of Hell, their usual Method is by Fire. Sometimes they Barbacue them over live-Coals, taking them off every now and then, to prolong their Misery; at other times they will Stick Sharp Pieces of Light-wood all over their Body's, and setting them afire, let them burn down into the Flesh to the very Bone. And when they take a Stout Fellow, that they believe able to endure a great deal, they will tear all the Flesh off his Bones with red hot Pincers.

While these and such like Barbarities are practising, the Victors are so far from being touch'd with Tendernefs and Compassion, that they dance and Sing round these wretched Mortals, shewing all the Marks of Pleasure and Jollity. And if such cruelties happen to be executed in their Towns, they employ their Children in tormenting the Prisoners, in order to extinguish in them betimes all Sentiments of Humanity.

In the mean time, while these poor Wretches are under the Anguish of all this inhuman Treatment, they disdain so much as to groan, Sigh, or shew the least Sign of Dismay or concern, so much as in their Looks; on the Contrary, they make it a Point of Honour all the time to Soften their Features, and look as pleas'd as if they were in the Actual Enjoyment of Some Delight; and if they never sang before in their Lives, they will be sure to be Melodious on this sad and Disfmal Occasion.

¹ Tho' who can reproach the poor Indians for this, when Homer makes his celebrated Hero, Achilles, drag the Body of Hector at the Tail of his chariot, for having fought gallantly in defence of his Country. Nor was Alexander the Great, with all his Fam'd Generosity, less inhuman to the brave Tyrians, 2000 of whom he order'd to be crucify'd in cold Blood, For no other fault but for having defended their City most courageously against Him, during a Siege of Seven Monthis. And what was still more brutal, he dragg'd alive — at the Tail of his Chariot, thro' all the Streets, for defending the Town with so much Vigour.

1729

Oct.

So prodigious a Degree of Passive Valour in the Indians is the more to be wonder'd at, because in all Articles of Danger they are apt to behave like Cowards. And what is still more Surprizing, the very Women discover, on such Occasions, as great Fortitude and Contempt, both of Pain and Death, as the Gallantest of their Men can do.

- 21 The Apprehensions we had of losing the Horses in these Copse Woods were too well founded, nor were the Precautions we us'd Yesterday of driving them up Sufficient to prevent their Straying away afterwards, notwithstanding they were securely hobbled.

We therefore Order'd the men out early this Morning to look diligently for them, but it was late before any cou'd be found. It seems they had straggled in quest of Forrage, and, besides all that, the Bushes grew thick enough to conceal them from being Seen at the Smallest Distance. One of the People was so bewilder'd in search of his Horse, that he lost Himself, being no great Forester.

However, because we were willing to save time, we left two of our most expert Woodsmen behind to beat all the Adjacent Woods in Quest of Him.

In the mean while the Surveyors proceeded vigourously on their Business, but were so perplexed with Thickets at their first setting off, that their Progress was much retarded.

They were no sooner over that Difficulty, but they were oblig'd to encounter another. The rest of their day's-Work lay over very Sharp Hills, where the dry leaves were so Slippery that there was hardly any hold for their Feet. Such Rubbs as these prevented them from Measuring more than 4 Miles and 270 Poles.

Upon the Sides of these Hills the Soil was rich, tho' full of Stones, and the Trees reasonably large.

The Smoak continued still to Veil the Mountains from our

Sight, which made us long for Rain, or a brisk Gale of Wind, to disperse it. Nor was the loss of this wild Prospect all our concern, but we were apprehensive lest the Woods shou'd be burnt in the Course of our Line before us, or happen to take fire behind us, either of which wou'd effectually have Starv'd the Horses, and made us all Foot Soldiers. But we were so happy, thank God! as to escape this Misfortune in every Part of our Progreſs.

1729
Oa.

We were exceedingly uneasy about our lost man, knowing he had taken no Provision of any kind, nor was it much Advantage towards his Support, that he had taken his Gun along with him, because he had rarely been guilty of putting any thing to Death.

He had unluckily wander'd from the Camp Several Miles, and after Steering Sundry unsuccessfull Courses, in order to return, either to us or to the Line, was at length so tired he could go no Farther. In this Distress he sat himself down under a Tree, to recruit his jaded Spirits, and at the same time indulge a few Melancholy Reflections.

Famine was the first Phantom that appear'd to him, and was the more frightfull, because he fancy'd himself not quite Bear enough to Subsist long upon licking his Paws.

In the mean time the two Persons we had sent after him hunted diligently great part of the day without coming upon his Track. They fir'd their Pieces towards every Point of the Compass, but cou'd perceive no firing in return. However, advancing a little farther, at last they made a lucky Shot, that our Straggler had the good Fortune to hear, and he returning the Salute, they soon found each other with no Small Satisfaction. But tho' they lighted of the man, they cou'd by no means light of his Horse, and therefore he was oblig'd to be a Foot Soldier all the rest of the Journey.

Our Indian shot a Bear so prodigiously fat, that there was no way to kill Him but by firing in at his Ear.

1729
Oct.

The fore part of the Skull of that Animal being guarded by a double Bone, is hardly penetrable, and when it is very fat, a Bullet aim'd at his Body is apt to lose its force, before it reaches the Vitals.

This Animal is of the Dog kind, and our Indians, as well as Woodsmen, are as fond of its Flesh as the Chinese can be of that of the Common Hound.

- 22 Early in the Morning we sent back two men to make further Search for the horse that was Stray'd away. We were unwilling the Poor man shou'd Sustain such a Damage as wou'd eat out a large Part of his Pay, or that the Publick shou'd be at the Expence of reemburfing Him for it.

These foresters hunted all over the Neighbouring Woods, and took as much pains as if the Horse had been their own Property, but all their Diligence was to no purpose.

The Surveyors, in the mean time, being fearful of leaving these men too far behind, advanc'd the Line no farther than One Mile and 230 Poles.

As we rode along we found no less than three Bears and a fat Doe, that our Indian, who went out before us, had thrown in our Course, and we were very glad to pick them up.

About a Mile from the Camp we crost Miry Creek, So call'd because Several of the Horses were mired in its Branches. About 230 Poles beyond that, the Line intersected another River, that seem'd to be a Branch of the Irvin, to which we gave the Name of the Mayo, in complement to the other of our Surveyors. It was about 50 Yards wide where we forded it, being just below a Ledge of Rocks, which reacht across the River, and made a natural casquade.

Our Horses cou'd hardly keep their feet over these Slippery Rocks, which gave Some of their Riders no small Palpitation.

This River forks about a Quarter of a Mile below the Ford, and has Some Scattering Canes growing near the Mouth of it.

We pitcht our Tent on the Western Banks of the Mayo, for the Pleasure of being lull'd to Sleep by the Casquade. Here our Hunters had leisure to go out and try their Fortunes, and return'd loaden with Spoil. They brought in no less than Six Bears, exceedingly fat, so that the frying pan had no rest all Night. We had now the Opportunity of trying the speed of these lumpish Animals by a fair Course it had with the Nimblest of our Surveyors.

1729
Oct.

A Cubb of a year Old will run very fast, because, being upon his growth, he is never encumber'd with too much fat; but the Old ones are more Sluggish and unwieldy, especially when Mast is Plenty. Then their Nimblest Gait is only a heavy Gallop, and their Motion is still Slower down hill, where they are oblig'd to Sidle very awkwardly, to keep their Lights from rising up into their Throat.

These Beasts always endeavour to avoid a man, except when they are wounded, or happen to be engaged in the Protection of their Cubbs.

By the force of these Instincts and that of Self-Preservation, they will now and then throw off all Reverence for their Maker's Image: For that Reason, excess of hunger will provoke them to the same Desperate Attack, for the support of their Being.

A Memorable Instance of the last Case is said to have happen'd not long ago in New England, where a Bear assaulted a Man just by his own Door, and rearing himself upon his Haunches, offer'd to take him lovingly into his Hug. But the Man's Wife observing the Danger her Husband was in, had the courage to run behind the Bear, and thrust her two Thumbs into his Eyes. This made Bruin quit the Man, and turn short upon the Woman to take his Revenge, but She had the Presence of mind to spring back with more than Female Agility, and so both their Lives were preserv'd.

At the Distance of 62 Poles from where we lay, we crost the 23

1729
Oct.

South Branch of what we took for the Irvin, nor was it without Difficulty we got over, tho' it happen'd to be without Damage.

Great part of the way after that was Mountainous, so that we were no sooner got down one Hill, but we were oblig'd to climb up another. Only for the last Mile of our Stage, we encounter'd a Locust Thicket that was level, but interlac'd terribly with Bryars and Grape Vines.

We forded a large creek, no less than five times, the Banks of which were so steep that we were forc'd to cut them down with a Hough.

We gave it the Name of Crooked creek, because of its frequent Meanders. The Sides of it were planted with Shrub-Canes, extremely inviting to the Horses, which were now quite jaded with clambering up so many Precipices, and tugging thro' so many dismal Thickets, notwithstanding which we pusht the Line this day Four Miles and 69 Poles. The men were so unthrifty this Morning as to bring but a Small Portion of their Abundance along with them. This was the more unlucky, because we cou'd discover no Sort of Game the whole livelong Day. Woodsmen are certainly good Christians in one respect, at least, that they always leave the Morrow to care for itself; tho' for that very reason they ought to pray more fervently for their Dayly Bread than most of them remember to do.

The Mountains were still conceal'd from our Eyes by a cloud of Smoak. As we went along we were alarmed at the Sight of a great Fire, which shewed itself to the Northward. This made our small Corps march in closer Order than we us'd to do, lest perchance we might be waylaid by Indians. It made us look out Sharp to see if we cou'd discover any Track or other Token of these insidious Forresters, but found none. In the mean time we came often upon the Track of Bears, which can't without some Skill be distinguisht from that of Human Creatures, made with Naked Feet. And Indeed a Young Woodsman wou'd be

puzzled to find out the Difference, which consists principally in a Bear's Paws being something Smaller than a Man's foot, and in its leaving sometimes the Mark of its Claws in the Impression made upon the Ground. 1729
Oct.

The Soil where the Locust Thicket grew, was exceedingly rich, as it constantly is, where that kind of Tree is Naturally and largely produc'd.

But the Defolation made there lately, either by Fire or Caterpillars, had been so general, that we could not see a Tree of any Bigness standing within our Prospect. And the Reason why a Fire makes such a Havock in these lonely Parts is this.

The Woods are not there burnt every year, as they generally are amongst the Inhabitants. But the dead Leaves and Traff of many years are heapt up together, which being at length kindled by the Indians that happen to pass that way, furnish fuel for a conflagration that carries all before it.

There is a beautiful Range of Hills, as level as a Terrass-Walk, that overlooks the Valley through which Crooked Creek conveys its Spiral Stream.

This Terrass runs pretty near East and West, about two Miles South of the Line, and is almost Parallel with it.

The Horses had been too much harass'd to permit us to ride at all out of our way, for the pleasure of any Prospect, or the gratification of any Curiosity. This confin'd us to the Narrow Sphere of our Business, and is at the same time a just Excuse for not animating our Story with greater Variety.

The Surveyors went out the sooner this Morning, by reason ²⁴ the men lost very little time in Cooking their Breakfast. They had made but a Spare Meal over Night, leaving nothing but the Hide of a Bear for the Morrow. Some of the keenest of them got up at Midnight to Cook that nice Morfel after the Indian Manner.

1729

Oct.

They first Singed the Hair clean off, that none of it might Stick in their Throats; then they boil'd the Pelt into Soup, which had a Stratum of Grease Swimming upon it full half an Inch Thick. However, they commended this Dish extremely; tho' I believe the Praises they gave it were more owing to their good Stomach than to their good Taſt.

The Line was extended 6 Miles and 300 Poles, and in that Diſtance croſſt Crooked Creek at leaſt eight times more.

We were forc'd to ſcuffle through a Thicket about two Miles in breadth, planted with Locuſts and hiccory Sapplings, as cloſe as they cou'd ſtand together. Amongſt theſe there was hardly a Tree of Tolerable Growth within View. It was a dead Plane of Several Miles Extent, and very fertile Soil. Beyond that the Woods were open for about three Miles, but Mountainous. All the reſt of our Day's Journey was peſter'd with Buſhes and Grape Vines, in the thickeſt of which we were oblig'd to take up our Quarters, near one of the Branches of Crooked creek.

This Night it was the Men's good fortune to fare very ſumptuouſly. The Indian had kill'd two large Bears, the fateſt of which he had taken napping. One of the People too Shot a Raccoon, which is alſo of the Dog-kind, and as big as a ſmall Fox, tho' its Legs are Shorter, and when fat has much a higher reliſh than either Mutton or Kid. 'Tis naturally not Carniverous, but very fond of Indian corn and Pariſmons.

The fat of this Animal is reckon'd very good to aſſuage Swellings and Inflammations. Some old Maids are at the Trouble of breeding them up tame, for the pleaſure of ſeeing them play over as many Humorous Tricks as a Munkey. It climbs up ſmall Trees, like a Bear, by embracing the Bodies of them.

Till this Night we had accuſtom'd ourſelves to go to Bed in our Night-Gowns, believing we ſhou'd thereby be better ſecur'd

from the cold : but upon tryal found we lay much warmer by Stripping to our Shirts, and Spreading our Gowns over us. 1729
O^a.

A True Woodsman, if he have no more than a Single Blanket, constantly pulls all off, and, lying on one part of it, draws the other over him, believing it much more refreshing to ly so, than in his cloaths ; and if he find himself not warm enough, Shifts his Lodging to Leeward of the Fire, in which Situation the smoak will drive over him, and effectually correct the cold Dews that wou'd otherwise descend upon his Person, perhaps to his great damage.

The Air clearing up this Morning, we were again agreeably surprized with a full Prospect of the Mountains. They discover'd themselves both to the North and South of us, on either side, not distant above ten Miles, according to our best Computation.

We cou'd now see those to the North rise in four distinct Ledges, one above another, but those to the South form'd only a Single Ledge, and that broken and interrupted in many Places ; or rather they were only single Mountains detach't from each other.

One of the Southern Mountains was so vastly high, it seem'd to hide its head in the Clouds, and the West End of it terminated in a horrible Precipice, that we call'd the Despairing Lover's Leap. The Next to it, towards the East, was lower, except at one End, where it heav'd itself up in the form of a vast Stack of Chimny's.

The Course of the Northern Mountains seem'd to tend West-South-West, and those to the Southward very near West. We cou'd descry other Mountains ahead of us, exactly in the Course of the Line, tho' at a much greater distance. In this Point of View, the Ledges on the right and Left both seem'd to close, and form a Natural Amphi-Theater.

Thus 'twas our Fortune to be wedg'd in betwixt these two Ranges of Mountains, insomuch that if our Line had run ten

1729
Oct.

Miles on either Side, it had butt'd before this day either upon one or the other, both of them now Stretching away plainly to the Eastward of us.

It had rain'd a little in the Night, which disperst the smoak and open'd this Romantick Scene to us all at once, tho' it was again hid from our Eyes as we mov'd forwards, by the rough Woods we had the Misfortune to be engag'd with. The Bushes were so thick for near four Miles together, that they tore the Deer-Skins to Pieces that guarded the Bread-Bags. Tho', as rough as the Woods were, the Soil was extremely good all the way, being washt down from the Neighbouring Hills into the Plane Country. Notwithstanding all these Difficulties, the Surveyors drove on the line 4 Miles and 205 Poles.

In the mean time we were so unlucky as to meet with no Sort of Game the whole day, so that the men were oblig'd to make a frugal distribution of what little they left in the Morning.

We encamp't upon a small Rill, where the Horses came off as temperatly as their Masters. They were by this time grown so thin, by hard Travel and Spare Feeding, that henceforth, in pure Compassion, we chose to perform the greater Part of the Journey on foot. And as our Baggage was by this time grown much lighter, we divided it, after the best Manner, that every Horse's Load might be proportion'd to the Strength he had left. Tho', after all the prudent Measures we cou'd take, we perceiv'd the Hills began to rise upon us so fast in our Front, that it wou'd be impossible for us to proceed much farther.

We saw very few Squirrels in the upper parts, because the Wild Cats devour them unmercifully. Of these there are four kinds: The Fox Squirrel, the Gray, the Flying, and the Ground-Squirrel.

These last resemble a Rat in every thing but the Tail, and the black and Ruffet Streaks that run down the Length of their little Bodies.

We found our way grow still more Mountainous, after extending the Line 300 Poles farther. We came then to a Rivulet that ran with a Swift Current towards the South. This we fancy'd to be another Branch of the Irvin, tho' some of these men, who had been Indian Traders, judg'd it rather to be the head of Deep River, that discharges its Stream into that of Pee Dee; but this seem'd a wild Conjecture.

1729
Oct.
26

The Hills beyond that River were exceedingly lofty, and not to be attempted by our Jaded Palfreys, which could now hardly drag their Legs after them upon level Ground. Besides, the Bread began to grow Scanty, and the Winter Season to advance apace upon us.

We had likewise reason to apprehend the Consequences of being intercepted by deep Snows, and the Swelling of the many Waters between us and Home. The first of these Misfortunes would starve all our Horses, and the Other ourselves, by cutting off our Retreat, and obliging us to Winter in those Desolate Woods. These considerations determin'd us to Stop short here, and push our Adventures no farther. The last Tree we markt was a Red Oak, growing on the Bank of the River; and to make the Place more remarkable, we blaz'd all the Trees around it.

We found the whole Distance from Corotuck Inlet to the Rivulet where we left off, to be, in a Strait Line, Two Hundred and Forty-one Miles and Two Hundred and Thirty Poles. And from the Place where the Carolina Commissioners deserted us, 72 Miles and 302 Poles. This last part of the Journey was generally very hilly, or else grown up with troublesome Thickets and underwoods, all which our Carolina Friends had the Discretion to avoid.

We encamp'd in a dirty Valley near the Rivulet above-mention'd, for the advantage of the Canes, and so sacrificed our own Convenience for that of our Horses.

1729


Oct.

There was a Small Mountain half a Mile to the Northward of us, which we had the Curiosity to Climb up in the Afternoon, in Order to enlarge our Prospect. From thence we were able to discover where the two Ledges of Mountains clos'd, as near as we cou'd guess, about 30 Miles to the West of us, and lamented that our present circumstances wou'd not permit us to advance the Line to that Place, which the Hand of Nature had made so very remarkable.

Not far from our Quarters one of the men pickt up a pair of Elk's Horns, not very large, and discover'd the Track of the Elk that had Shed them. It was rare to find any Tokens of those Animals so far to the South, because they keep commonly to the Northward of 37 degrees, as the Buffaloes, for the most part, confine themselves to the Southward of that Latitude.

The Elk is full as big as a Horse, and of the Deer kind. The Stags only have Horns, and those exceedingly large and Spreading. Their Colour is Something lighter than that of the Red Deer, and their Flesh tougher. Their swiftest Speed is a large trot, and in that Motion they turn their Horns back upon their Necks, and Cock their Noses aloft in the Air. Nature has taught them this Attitude to save their Antlers from being entangled in the Thickets, which they always retire to. They are very shy, and have the Sense of Smelling so exquisite that they wind a man at a great distance. For this reason they are Seldom Seen but when the Air is moist, in which Case their smell is not so Nice.

They commonly herd together, and the Indians say, if one of the Drove happen by some Wound to be disabled from making his Escape, the rest will forsake their fears to defend their Friend, which they will do with great obstinacy, till they are kill'd upon the Spot. Tho', otherwise, they are so alarm'd at the Sight of a man, that to avoid him they will Sometimes throw themselves down very high Precipices into the River.

A misadventure happen'd here, which gave us no Small perplexity. One of the Commissioners was so unlucky as to bruise his Foot against a Stump, which brought on a formal Fit of the Gout. 1729
Oct. 

It must be own'd there cou'd not be a more unseasonable time, nor a more improper Situation, for any one to be attackt by that cruel Distemper. The Joint was so inflam'd that he cou'd neither draw Shoe nor Boot upon it; and to ride without either wou'd have expos'd him to so many rude knocks and Bruises, in those rough Woods, as to be intolerable even to a Stoick.

It was happy, indeed, that we were to rest here the next day, being Sunday, that there might be leisure for trying some Speedy Remedy. Accordingly he was persuaded to bathe his Foot in Cold Water, in Order to repel the Humour and assuage the Inflammation. This made it less painful, and gave us hopes, too, of reducing the Swelling in a Short time.

Our men had the fortune to kill a Brace of Bears, a fat Buck, and a Wild Turkey, all which paid them with Interest for Yesterday's Abstinence. This constant and Seasonable Supply of all our daily Wants made us reflect thankfully on the Bounty of Providence.

And that we might not be unmindful of being all along fed by Heaven in this great and Solitary Wilderness, we agreed to Wear in our Hats the Maoiti, which is, in Indian, the Beard of a Wild Turkey-Cock, and on our Breasts the Figure of that Fowl with its Wings extended, and holding in its Claws a scrowl, with this Motto, "VICE COTURNICUM," meaning that we had been Supported by them in the Wilderness in the room of Quails.

This being Sunday we were not wanting in our Thanks to 27
Heaven for the Constant Support and Protection we had been favour'd with. Nor did our Chaplain fail to put us in mind of Our Duty by a Sermon proper for the Occasion.

1729
Oct.

We order'd a Strict Inquiry to be made into the Quantity of Bread we had left, and found no more than wou'd Subsist us a Fortnight at Short Allowance. We made a fair Distribution of our whole Stock, and at the Same time recommended to the Men to manage this, their last Stake, to the best advantage, not knowing how long they would be oblig'd to live upon it.

We likewise directed them to keep a Watchfull eye upon their Horses, that none of them might be missing the next Morning, to hinder our Return.

There fell some Rain before Noon, which made our Camp more a Bogg than it was before. This moist Situation began to infect some of the men with Fevers, and some with Fluxes, which however we soon remov'd with Peruvian Bark and Ipo-coacana.

In the Afternoon we marcht up again to the top of the Hill to entertain our Eyes a Second time with the View of the Mountains, but a perverse Fog arose that hid them from our Sight.

In the Evening we deliberated which way it might be most proper to return. We had at first intended to cross over at the foot of the Mountains to the head of James River, that we might be able to describe that Natural Boundary so far. But, on Second Thoughts, we found many good Reasons against that laudable Design, Such as the Weakness of our Horses, the Scantiness of our Bread, and the near approach of Winter. We had Cause to believe the way might be full of Hills, and the farther we went towards the North, the more danger there wou'd be of Snow. Such considerations as these determin'd us at last to make the best of our way back upon the Line, which was the Straittest, and Consequently the shortest way to the Inhabitants. We knew the worst of that Course, and were sure of a beaten Path all the way, while we were totally ignorant what Difficulties and Dangers the other Course might be attended with. So

Prudence got the better for once of Curiosity, and the Itch for new Discoveries gave Place to Self-preservation. 1729
Oa.

Our Inclination was the Stronger to cross over according to the Course of the Mountains, that we might find out whether James River and Appamattock River head there, or run quite thro' them. 'Tis Certain that Potomec passes in a large Stream thro' the Main Ledge, and then divides itself into two considerable Rivers. That which Stretches away to the Northward is call'd Cohungaroota,¹ and that which flows to the South-west, hath the Name of Sharantow.

The Course of this last Stream is near parallel to the Blue Ridge of Mountains, at the distance only of about three or four Miles. Tho' how far it may continue that Course has not yet been sufficiently discover'd, but some Woodsmen pretend to say it runs as far as the source of Roanoak; Nay, they are so very particular as to tell us that Roanoak, Sharantow, and another Wide Branch of Mississippi, all head in one and the Same Mountain.

What dependence there may be upon this Conjectural Geography, I wont pretend to say, tho' 'tis certain that Sharantow keeps close to the Mountains, as far as we are acquainted with its Tendency. We are likewise assur'd that the South Branch of James River, within less than 20 Miles East of the Main Ledge, makes an Elbow, and runs due South-west, which is parallel with the Mountains on this Side. But how far it Stretches that way, before it returns, is not yet certainly known, no more than where it takes its Rise.

In the mean time it is Strange that our Woodsmen have not had Curiosity enough to inform themselves more exactly of these

¹ Which by a Late Survey has been found to extend above 200 Miles before it reaches its Source, in a Mountain, from whence Allegany, one of the Branches of Mississippi, takes its Rise, and runs South-West, as this River does South-East.

1729
O&. particulars, and it is Stranger Still that the Government has never thought it worth the Expense of making an accurate Survey of the Mountains, that we might be Masters of that Natural Fortification before the French, who in some Places have Settlements not very distant from it.

It therefore concerns his Majesty's Service very nearly, and the Safety of His Subjects in this part of the World, to take Possession of so important a Barrier in time, lest our good Friends, the French, and the Indians, thro' their Means, prove a perpetual Annoyance to these Colonies.


Another Reason to invite us to Secure this great Ledge of Mountains is, the Probability that very Valuable Mines may be discover'd there. Nor wou'd it be at all extravagant to hope for Silver Mines, among the rest, because Part of these Mountains ly exactly in the same Parallel, as well as upon the Same Continent with New Mexico, and the Mines of St. Barb.

28 We had given Orders for the Horses to be brought up early, but the likelihood of more Rain prevented our being over-hasty in decamping. Nor were we out in our conjectures, for about ten a'clock it began to fall very plentifully.

Our Commissioner's Pain began now to abate, as the Swelling encreas'd. He made an excellent Figure for a Mountaineer, with one boot of Leather and the other of Flannel. Thus accoutur'd, he intended to mount, if the Rain had not happen'd opportunely to prevent him.

Tho', in Truth, it was hardly possible for Him to ride with so Slender a Defense, without exposing his Foot to be bruif'd and tormented by the Saplings, that stood thick on either side of the Path. It was therefore a most Seasonable Rain for Him, as it gave more time for his Distemper to abate.

Tho' it may be very difficult to find a certain Cure for the Gout, yet it is not improbable but some things may ease the Pain, and Shorten the Fits of it. And those Medicines are most

likely to do this, that Supple the Parts, and clear the Passage Through the Narrow Vessels, that are the Seat of this cruel Disease. Nothing will do this more Suddenly than Rattle-snake's Oyl, which will even penetrate the Pores of Glafs when warm'd in the sun. 1729
Oct. 

. It was unfortunate, therefore, that we had not taken out the Fat of those Snakes we had kill'd some time before, for the Benefit of so useful an Experiment, as well as for the Relief of our Fellow-Traveller.

But lately the Seneca Rattle-Snake Root has been discover'd in this Country, which being infus'd in Wine, and drank Morning and Evening, has in Several Instances had a very happy Effect upon the Gout, and enabled Cripples to throw away their Crutches and walk several Miles, and, what is Stranger Still, it takes away the Pain in half an hour.

Nor was the Gout the only Disease amongst us that was hard to cure. We had a man in our Company who had too Voracious a Stomach for a Woodsman. He ate as much as any other two, but all he Swallow'd stuck by him till it was carry'd off by Strong Purge. Without this Assistance, often repeated, his Belly and Bowels wou'd swell to so enormous a Bulk that he could hardly breathe, especially when he lay down, just as if he had had an Asthma; tho', notwithstanding this oddness of constitution, he was a very Strong, lively Fellow, and us'd abundance of Violent Exercise, by which 'twas wonderfull the Peristaltick Motion was not more Vigorously promoted.

We gave this poor Man Several Purges, which only eas'd Him for the present, and the next day he wou'd grow as burly as ever. At last we gave Him a Moderate Dose of ippocoacanah, in Broth made very Salt, which turn'd all its Operation downwards. This had so happy an Effect that, from that day forward to the End of our Journey, all his Complaint ceas'd, and the passages continued unobstructed.

1729
Oct.

The Rain continued most of the Day and Some part of the Night, which incommoded us much in our Dirty Camp, and made the men think of Nothing but Eating, even at the time when nobody cou'd Stir out to make provision for it.

29 Tho' we were flattered in the morning with the usual Tokens of a fair Day; yet they all blew over, and it rain'd hard before we cou'd make ready for our Departure.

This was still in favour of our Podagrous Friend, whose Lameness was now grown better, and the Inflammation fallen. Nor did it seem to need above one day more to reduce it to its Natural Proportion, and make it fit for the Boot; And effectually The Rain procur'd this Benefit for him, and gave him particular Reason to believe his Stars propitious.

Notwithstanding the falling Weather, our Hunters fall'd out in the afternoon, and drove the Woods in a Ring, which was thus performed. From the circumference of a large Circle they all march't inwards and drove the Game towards the center. By this means they shot a Brace of fat Bears, which came very seasonably, because we had made clean Work in the Morning and were in Danger of dining with St. Anthony, or his Grace Duke Humphry.

But in this Expedition the unhappy man who had lost himself once before, Straggled again so far in Pursuit of a Deer, that he was hurry'd a second time quite out of his knowledge. And Night coming on before he cou'd recover the Camp, he was obliged to lie down, without any of the Comforts of Fire, Food or covering; Nor would his Fears suffer him to Sleep very Sound, because, to his great disturbance, the Wolves howl'd all that Night, and the Panthers scream'd most frightfully.

In the Evening a brisk North-Wester swept all the Clouds from the Sky, and expos'd the mountains as well as the Stars to our Prospect.

That which was the most lofty to the Southward, and which

we call'd the Lover's Leap, some of our Indian Traders fondly fancy'd was the Kiawan mountain, which they had formerly seen from the country of the Cherokees. 1729
Oct.

They were the more positive by reason of the prodigious Precipice that remarkably distinguished the West End of it.

We seem'd however not to be far enough South for that, tho' 'tis not improbable but a few miles farther the Course of our Line might carry us to the most Northerly Towns of the Cherokees.

What makes this the more credible, is the North West Course, that our Traders take from the Catawbias for some hundred miles together, when they carry Goods that round-about way to the Cherokees.

It was a great Pity that the want of Bread, and the Weakness of our Horses, hinder'd us from making the Discovery. Tho' the great Service of such an Excursion might have been to the Country wou'd certainly have made the attempt not only pardonable, but much to be commended.

Our Traders are now at the vast Charge and Fatigue of travelling above five hundred miles for the Benefit of that traffique which hardly quits cost. Wou'd it not then be worth the Assembly's while to be at some charge to find a Shorter cut to carry on so profitable a Trade, with more advantage, and less hazard and Trouble, than they do at present? For I am persuaded it will not then be half the Distance that our Traders make it now, nor half so far as Georgia lies from the Northern Clans of that Nation.

Such a Discovery would certainly prove an unspeakable Advantage to this Colony, by facilitating a Trade with so considerable a nation of Indians, which have 62 Towns, and more than 4000 Fighting Men. Our Traders at that rate would be able to undersell those sent from the other Colonies so much, that the Indians must have reason to deal with them preferable to all others.

1729
Oct.

Of late the new colony of Georgia has made an act obliging us to go 400 miles to take out a License to traffick with these Cherokees, tho' many of their Towns ly out of their Bounds, and we had carry'd on this Trade 80 years before that Colony was thought of.

30 In the Morning early the man who had gone astray the day before found his way to the Camp, by the Sound of the Bells that were upon the Horses' Necks.

At nine a'clock we began our March back towards the rising Sun; for tho' we had finisht the Line, yet we had not yet near finisht our Fatigue. We had after all 200 good miles at least to our several Habitations, and the Horses were brought so low, that we were oblig'd to travel on foot great part of the way, and that in our Boots, too, to save our Legs from being torn to pieces by the Bushes and Briars. Had we not done this, we must have left all our Horses behind, which cou'd now hardly drag their Legs after them, and with all the favour we cou'd show the poor Animals, we were forc'd to set Seven of them free, not far from the foot of the Mountains.

Four men were despatcht early to clear the Road, that our Lame Commissioner's leg might be in less danger of being bruif'd, and that the Baggage Horses might travel with less difficulty and more expedition.

As we past along, by favour of a Serene Sky, we had still, from every Eminence, a perfect view of the Mountains, as well to the North as to the South. We could not forbear now and then facing about to survey them, as if unwilling to part with a Prospect, which at the same time, like some Rake's, was very wild and very Agreeable.

We encourag'd the Horses to exert the little Strength they had, and being light, they made a shift to jog on about Eleven Miles. We Encampt on Crooked Creek, near a Thicket of Canes. In the front of our Camp rose a very beautiful Hill,

that bounded our View at about a Mile's Distance, and all the Intermediate space was cover'd with green canes. Tho', to our Sorrow, Fire-wood was Scarce, which was now the harder upon us, because a north-wester blew very cold from the Mountains. 1729
Oct.

The Indian kill'd a stately, fat Buck, & we pickt his Bones as clean as a score of Turkey-Buzzards cou'd have done.

By the advantage of a clear night, we made tryal once more of the Variation, and found it much the same as formerly.

This being his Majesty's Birth-Day, we drank all the Loyal Healths in excellent Water, not for the sake of the drink, (like many of our fellow subjects,) but purely for the Sake of the Toast. And because all Public Mirth shou'd be a little noisy, we fir'd several volleys of Canes, instead of Guns, which gave a loud report.

We threw them into the Fire, where the Air enclosed betwixt the Joints of the Canes, being expanded by the violent Heat, burst its narrow Bounds with a considerable explosion!

In the Evening one of the men knockt down an Opossum, which is a harmless little Beast, that will seldom go out of your way, and if you take hold of it, it will only grin, and hardly ever bite. The Flesh was well tasted and Tender, approaching nearest to Pig, which it also resembles in Bigness. The colour of its Fur was a Goose Gray, with a Swine's Snout, and a Tail like a Rat, but at least a foot long. By twisting this Tail about the arm of a Tree, it will hang with all its weight, and swing to any thing it wants to take hold of.

It has five Claws on the fore Feet of equal length, but the hinder feet have only Four claws, and a sort of Thumb standing off at a proper Distance.

Their Feet being thus form'd, qualify them for climbing up Trees to catch little Birds, which they are very fond of.

But the greatest Particularity of this creature, and which distinguishes it from most others that we are acquainted with, is

1729
Oct.

the FALSE BELLY of the FEMALE, into which her Young retreat in time of Danger. She can draw the Slit, which is the Inlet into this Pouch, so close, that you must look narrowly to find it, especially if she happen to be a Virgin.

Within the False Belly may be seen seven or eight Teats, on which the young Ones grow from their first Formation till they are big enough to fall off, like ripe Fruit from a Tree. This is so odd a method of Generation, that I should not have believed it without the Testimony of mine own Eyes. Besides a knowing and credible Person has assur'd me he has more than once observ'd the Embryo Possums growing to the Teat before they were compleatly Shaped, and afterwards watcht their daily growth till they were big enough for Birth. And all this he could the more easily pry into, because the Dam was so perfectly gentle and harmless, that he could handle her just as he pleas'd.

I cou'd hardly persuade myself to publish a thing so contrary to the Course that Nature takes in the Production of other Animals, unless it were a Matter Commonly believ'd in all Countries where that Creature is produc'd, and has been often observed by Persons of undoubted credit and understanding.

They say that the Leather-winged Bats produce their Young in the same uncommon Manner. And that young Sharks at Sea, and Young Vipers ashoar, run down the Throats of their Damms when they are closely pursued.

The frequent crossing of Crooked Creek, and mounting the Steep Banks of it, gave the finishing stroke to the foundering of our Horses: and no less than than two of them made a full stop here, and would not advance a foot farther, either by fair means or foul.

We had a Dreamer of Dreams amongst us, who warn'd me in the Morning to take care of myself, or I shou'd infallibly fall into the Creek; I thank'd him kindly, and us'd what Caution I

cou'd, but was not able it seems to avoid my Destiny, for my Horſe made a falſe ſtep and laid me down at my full Length in the water. 1729
Oët.

This was enough to bring dreaming into credit, and I think it much for the Honour of our expedition, that it was grac'd not only with PRIEST but alſo with a PROPHET.

We were ſo perplext with this Serpentine Creek, as well as in Paſſing the Branches of the Irvin, (which were ſwell'd ſince we ſaw them before,) that we could reach but 5 miles this whole day. In the Evening We pitched our Tent near Miry creek, (tho' an uncomfortable place to lodge in) purely for the advantage of the Canes.

Our Hunters killed a large Doe and two Bears, which made all other miſfortunes eaſy. Certainly no Tartar ever lov'd Horſe-fleſh, or Hottentot Guts and Garbage, better than Woodſmen do Bear. The truth of it is, it may be proper food perhaps for ſuch as Work or Ride it off, but, with our Chaplain's Leave, who lov'd it much, I think it not a very proper dyet for ſaints, becauſe 'tis apt to make them a little too rampant.

And now, for the good of mankind, and for the better Peopling an Infant colony, which has no want but that of Inhabitants, I will venture to publiſh a Secret of Importance, which our Indian diſcloſ'd to me. I aſkt him the reaſon why few or none of his Countrywomen were barren? To which curious Queſtion he answered, with a Broad grin upon his Face, they had an infallible SECRET for that. Upon my being importunate to know what the ſecret might be, he informed me that, if any Indian woman did not prove with child at a decent time after Marriage, the Huſband, to ſave his Reputation with the women, forthwith entered into a Bear-dyet for Six Weeks, which in that time makes him ſo vigorous that he grows exceedingly impertinent to his poor wife and 'tis great odds but he makes her a mother in Nine Months.

1729
O&.

And thus much I am able to say, besides, for the Reputation of the Bear Dyet, that all the Married men of our Company were joyful Fathers within forty weeks after they got Home, and most of the Single men had children sworn to them within the same time, our chaplain always excepted, who, with much ado, made a shift to cast out that importunate kind of Devil, by Dint of Fasting and Prayer.

Nov. 1 By the negligence of one of the Men in not hobbling his Horse, he straggled so far that he could not be found. This stopt us all the Morning long; Yct, because our Time should not be entirely lost, we endeavoured to observe the Latitude at twelve a clock. Though our Observation was not perfect, by reason the Wind blew a little too fresh, however, by Such a One as we cou'd make, we found ourselves in $36^{\circ} 20'$ only.

Notwithstanding our being thus delay'd, and the unevenness of the Ground, over which we were oblig'd to walk, (for most of us serv'd now in the Infantry,) we travell'd no less than 6 miles, Tho' as merciful as we were to our poor Beasts, another of 'em tired by the way, & was left behind for the Wolves & Panthers to feast upon.

As we marcht along, we had the fortune to kill a Brace of Bucks, as many Bears, and one wild Turkey. But this was carrying our Sport to wantonness, because we butchered more than we were able to transport. We ordered the Deer to be quarter'd and divided among the Horses for the lighter Carriage, and recommended the Bears to our daily attendants, the Turkey-Buzzards.

We always chose to carry Venison along with us rather than Bear, not only because it was less cumbersome, but likewise because the People cou'd eat it without Bread, which was now almost spent. Whereas the other, being richer food, lay too heavy upon the stomach, unless it were lightened by something farinaceous. This is what I thought proper to remarque, for the

service of all those whose Business or Diversion shall oblige them to live any time in the Woods.

1729
Nov.

And because I am persuaded that very usefull Matters may be found out by Searching this great Wilderness, especially the upper parts of it about the Mountains, I conceive it will help to engage able men in that good work, if I recommend a wholesome kind of Food, of very small Weight and very great Nourishment, that will secure them from Starving, in case they shou'd be so unlucky as to meet with no Game. The Chief discouragement at present from penetrating far into the Woods is the trouble of carrying a Load of Provisions. I must own Famine is a frightful Monster, and for that reason to be guarded against as well as we can. But the common precautions against it, are so burthensome, that People can't tarry long out, and go far enough from home, to make any effectual Discovery.

The Portable Provisions I would furnish our Foresters withal are Glue-Broth and rockahomini: one contains the Effence of Bread, the other of Meat.

The best way of making Glue-Broth is after the following method: Take a Leg of Beef, Veal, Venison, or any other Young Meat, because Old Meat will not so easily Jelly. Pare off all the fat, in which there is no Nutriment, and of the Lean make a very strong Broth, after the usual Manner, by boiling the meat to Rags till all the Goodness be out. After Skimming off what fat remains, pour the Broth into a wide Stew-Pan, well tinn'd, & let it simmer over a gentle, even Fire, till it come to a thick Jelly. Then take it off and set it over Boiling Water, which is an Evener Heat, and not so apt to burn the Broth to the Vessel. Over that let it evaporate, stirring it very often till it be reduc'd, when cold, into a Solid Substance like Glue. Then cut it into small Pieces, laying them Single in the Cold, that they may dry the Sooner. When the Pieces are perfectly

1729 dry, put them into a Cannister, and they will be good, if kept Dry,
 Nov. a whole East India Voyage.

This Glue is so Strong, that two or three Drams, dissolv'd in boiling Water with a little Salt, will make half a pint of good Broth, & if you shou'd be faint with fasting or Fatigue, let a small piece of this Glue melt in your Mouth, and you will find yourself surprisingly refreshed.

One Pound of this cookery wou'd keep a man in good heart above a Month, and is not only Nourishing, but likewise very wholesome. Particularly it is good against Fluxes, which Woodsmen are very liable to, by lying too near the moist ground, and guzzling too much cold Water. But as it will be only us'd now and then, in times of Scarcity, when Game is wanting, two Pounds of it will be enough for a Journey of Six Months.

But this Broth will be still more heartening, if you thicken every mess with half a Spoonful of Rockahominy, which is nothing but Indian Corn parched without burning, and reduced to Powder. The Fire drives out all the Watery Parts of the Corn, leaving the Strength of it behind, and this being very dry, becomes much lighter for carriage and less liable to be Spoilt by the Moist Air.

Thus half a Dozen Pounds of this Sprightful Bread will sustain a Man for as many Months, provided he husband it well, and always Spare it when he meets with Venison, which, as I said before, may be very Safely eaten without any Bread at all.

By what I have said, a Man needs not encumber himself with more than 8 or 10 Pounds of Provisions, tho' he continue half a year in the Woods.

These and his Gun will support him very well during that time, without the least danger of keeping one Single Fast. And tho' some of his days may be what the French call *Jours maigres*, yet there will happen no more of those than will be necessary for his health, and to carry off the Excesses of the Days of Plenty,

when our Travellers will be apt to indulge their Lawless Appetites too much. 1729
Nov. ²

The Heavens frowned this Morning, and threaten'd abundance of Rain, but our Zeal for returning made us defy the Weather, and decamp a little before Noon. Yet we had not advanc'd two Miles, before a Soaking Shower made us glad to pitch our Tent as fast as we could. We chose for that purpose a rising Ground, half a mile to the East of MATRIMONY CREEK. This was the first and only time we were caught in the Rain, during the whole Expedition. It us'd before to be so civil as to fall in the night, after we were safe in our Quarters, and had trench'd ourselves in; or else it came upon us on Sundays, when it was no Interruption to our Progress, nor any Inconvenience to our Persons.

We had, however, been so lucky in this Particular before, that we had abundant Reason to take our present soaking patiently, and the Misfortune was the less, because we had taken the Precaution to keep all our Baggage and Bedding perfectly dry.

This Rain was enliven'd with very loud Thunder, which was echo'd back by the Hills in the Neighbourhood in a frightful Manner. There is something in the Woods that makes the Sound of this Meteor more awfull, and the Violence of the Lightening more Visible. The Trees are frequently Shiver'd quite down to the Root, and sometimes perfectly twisted. But of all the Effects of Lightening that ever I heard of, the most amazing happen'd in this country, in the Year 1736.¹

In the Summer of that year a Surgeon of a Ship, whose Name was Davis, came ashore at York to visit a Patient. He was no sooner got into the House, but it began to rain with many terrible Claps of Thunder. When it was almost dark there came a dreadful Flash of Lightning, which Struck the Surgeon dead as

¹ See Note, *ante*, Page 1.

1729
Nov.

he was walking about the Room, but hurt no other Person, tho' several were near him. At the same time it made a large Hole in the Trunk of a Pine Tree, which grew about Ten Feet from the Window. But what was most surprising in this Disaster was, that on the Breast of the unfortunate man that was kill'd was the Figure of a Pine Tree, as exactly delineated as any Limner in the World could draw it, nay, the Resemblance went so far as to represent the colour of the Pine, as well as the Figure. The Lightning must probably have pass'd thro' the Tree first before it struck the Man, and by that means have printed the Icon of it on his breast.

But whatever may have been the cause, the Effect was certain, and can be attested by a Cloud of Witnesses who had the curiosity to go and see this Wonderful Phenomenon.

The worst of it was, we were forced to Encamp in a barren place, where there was hardly a blade of Grass to be seen, Even the wild Rosemary failed us here, which gave us but too just apprehensions that we should not only be oblig'd to trudge all the way home on foot, but also to lug our Baggage at our Backs into the Bargain.

Thus we learnt by our own Experience, that Horses are very improper animals to use in a long Ramble into the Woods, and the better they have been used to be fed, they are still the worse. Such will fall away a great deal faster, and fail much sooner, than those which are wont to be at their own keeping. Besides, Horses that have been accusom'd to a Plane and Champaign Country will founder presently, when they come to clamber up Hills, and batter their Hoofs against continual Rocks.

We need Welsh Runts, and Highland Galloways to climb our Mountains withal; they are us'd to Precipices, and will bite as close as Banstead Down Sheep. But I should much rather recommend Mules, if we had them, for these long and painful Expeditions; tho' till they can be bred, certainly Asses are the

fitteſt Beaſts of Burthen for the Mountains. They are ſure-footed, patient under the heaviest Fatigue, and will ſubſiſt upon Moſs, or Browſing on Shrubs all the Winter. One of them will carry the Neceſſary Luggage of four Men, without any Difficulty, and upon a Pinch will take a Quarter of Bear or Veniſon upon their Backs into the Bargain.

1729
Nov.

Thus, when the Men are light and diſengaged from every thing but their Guns, they may go the whole Journey on foot with pleaſure. And tho' my Dear Countrymen have ſo great a Paſſion for riding, that they will often walk two miles to catch a Horſe, in Order to ride One, yet, if they'll pleaſe to take my Word for't, when they go into the Woods upon Diſcovery, I would adviſe them by all Means to march a-foot, for they will then be deliver'd from the great Care and Concern for their Horſes, which takes up too large a portion of their time.

Over Night we are now at the trouble of hobbling them out, and often of leading them a mile or two to a convenient place for Forrage, and then in the morning we are ſome Hours in finding them again, becauſe they are apt to ſtray a great way from the place where they were turn'd out. Now and then, too, they are loſt for a whole day together, and are frequently ſo weak and jaded, that the Company muſt ly ſtill ſeveral days, near ſome Meadow, or High-land Pond, to recruit them. All theſe delays retard their Progreſs intolerably; whereas, if they had only a few Aſſes, they wou'd abide cloſe to the Camp, and find Sufficient food every where, and in all Seaſons of the Year. Men wou'd then be able to travel Safely over Hills and Dales, nor wou'd the Steepeſt Mountains obſtruct their Progreſs.

They might alſo ſearch more narrowly for Mines and other Productions of Nature, without being confin'd to level grounds, in Compliment to the jades they ride on. And one may foretell, without the Spirit of Divination, that ſo long as Woodſmen continue to range on Horſe-back, we ſhall be Strangers to our

1729
Nov.

own Country, and a few or no valuable Discoveries will ever be made.

The FRENCH COURIERS *de Bois*, who have run from one one End of the Continent to the other, have performed it all on foot, or else in all probability must have continued as ignorant as we are.

Our Country has now been inhabited more than 130 years by the English, and still we hardly know any thing of the Appalachian Mountains, that are no where above 250 miles from the sea. Whereas the French, who are later comers, have rang'd from Quebec Southward as far as the Mouth of Mississippi, in the bay of Mexico, and to the West almost as far as California, which is either way above 2000 miles.

- 3 A North-west Wind having clear'd the Sky, we were now tempted to travel on a Sunday, for the first time, for want of more plentiful Forage, though some of the more Scrupulous amongst us were unwilling to do Evil, that good might come of it, and make our Cattle work a Good part of the Day in order to fill their Bellies at Night. However, the Chaplain put on his casuistical Face, and offer'd to take the sin upon Himself. We therefore consented to move a Sabbath Day's Journey of 3 or 4 Miles, it appearing to be a Matter of some necessity.

On the way our unmerciful Indian kill'd no less than two Brace of Deer and a large Bear. We only prim'd the Deer, being unwilling to be encumbered with their whole Carcasses. The rest we consign'd to the Wolves, which in Return feranaded us great part of the Night. They are very clamorous in their Banquets, which we know is the way some other Brutes have, in the extravagance of their Jollity and Sprightliness, of expressing their thanks to Providence.

We came to our Old camp, in Sight of the River Irvin, whose Stream was Swell'd now near four feet with the Rain that fell the Day before. This made it impracticable for us to ford

it, nor could we guess when the water wou'd fall enough to let us go over.

1729
Nov.

This put our Mathematical Professor, who shou'd have set a better Example, into the Vapours, fearing he shou'd be oblig'd to take up his Winter Quarters in that doleful Wilderness. But the rest were not affected with his want of Faith, but preserv'd a Firmness of Mind Superior to such little Adverse Accidents. They trusted that the same good Providence which had most remarkably prosper'd them hitherto, would continue his goodness and conduct them safe to the End of their Journey.

However, we found plainly that travelling on the Sunday, contrary to our constant Rule, had not thriven with us in the least. We were not gainers of any distance by it, because the river made us pay two days for Violating one.

Nevertheless, by making this Reflection, I would not be thought so rigid an observer of the Sabbath as to allow of no Work at all to be done, or Journeys to be taken upon it. I should not care to ly still and be knockt on the head, as the Jews were heretofore by Antiochus, because I believ'd it unlawful to stand upon my Defense on this good day. Nor would I care, like a certain New England Magistrate, to order a Man to the Whipping Post, for daring to ride for a Midwife on the Lord's Day.

On the contrary, I am for doing all acts of Necessity, Charity, and Self-Preservation, upon a Sunday as well as other days of the Week. But, as I think our present March cou'd not Strictly be justify'd by any of these Rules, it was but just we should suffer a little for it.

I never could learn that the Indians set apart any day of the Week or the Year for the Service of God. They pray, as Philosophers eat, only when they have a stomach, without having any set time for it. Indeed these Idle People have very little occasion for a sabbath to refresh themselves after hard Labour,

1729 because very few of them ever Labour at all. Like the wild
 Nov. Irish, they would rather want than Work, and are all men of
 { Pleasure, to whom every day is a day of rest.

Indeed, in their Hunting, they will take a little Pains; but this being only a Diversion, their spirits are rather rais'd than depress'd by it, and therefore need at most but a Night's Sleep to recruit them.

4 By some Stakes we had driven into the River yesterday, we perceiv'd the Water began to fall, but fell so Slowly that we found we must have patience a day or two longer. And because we were unwilling to ly altogether Idle, we sent back some of the men to bring up the two Horses that tir'd the Saturday before. They were found near the place where we had left them, but seem'd too sensible of their Liberty to come to us. They were found Standing indeed, but as Motionless as the Equestrian statue at CHARING-CROSS.

We had great reason to apprehend more Rain by the clouds that drove over our Heads. The boldest amongst us were not without some Pangs of uneasiness at so very Sullen a Prospect. However, God be prais'd! it all blew over in a few Hours.

If much Rain had fallen, we resolv'd to make a Raft and bind it together with Grape Vines, to Ferry ourselves and Baggage over the River. Tho', in that Case, we expected the Swiftness of the Stream wou'd have carry'd down our Raft a long way before we cou'd have tugg'd it to the opposite shoar.

One of the Young Fellows we had sent to bring up the tired Horses entertained us in the Evening with a remarkable adventure he had met with that day.

He had straggled, it seems, from his Company in a mist, and made a cub of a year old betake itself to a Tree. While he was new-priming his piece, with intent to fetch it down, the Old Gentlewoman appeared, and perceiving her Heir apparent in Distress, advanc'd open-mouth'd to his relief.

1729
Nov.

The man was so intent upon his Game, that she had approacht very near him before he perceived her. But finding his Danger, he faced about upon the Enemy, which immediately rear'd upon her posteriors, & put herself in Battle Array.

The Man, admiring at the Bear's assurance, endeavour'd to fire upon Her, but by the Dampness of the Priming, his Gun did not go off. He cockt it a second time, and had the same misfortune. After missing Fire twice, he had the folly to punch the Beast with the muzzle of his Piece; but mother Bruin, being upon her Guard, seized the Weapon with her Paws, and by main strength wrenched it out of the Fellow's Hands.

The Man being thus fairly disarm'd, thought himself no longer a Match for the Enemy, and therefore retreated as fast as his Legs could carry him.

The brute naturally grew bolder upon the flight of her Adversary, and pursued him with all her heavy speed. For some time it was doubtful whether fear made one run faster, or Fury the other. But after an even course of about 50 yards, the Man had the Mishap to Stumble over a Stump, and fell down at his full Length. He now wou'd have sold his Life a Penny-worth; but the Bear, apprehending there might be some Trick in the Fall, instantly halted, and lookt with much attention on her Prostrate Foe.

In the mean while, the Man had with great presence of Mind resolved to make the Bear believe he was dead, by lying Breathless on the Ground, in Hopes that the Beast would be too generous to kill him over again. To carry on the Farce, he acted the Corpse for some time without daring to raise his head, to see how near the Monster was to him. But in about two Minutes, to his unspeakable Comfort, he was rais'd from the Dead by the Barking of a Dog, belonging to one of his companions, who came Seasonably to his Rescue, and drove the Bear

1729 from pursuing the Man to take care of her Cub, which she fear'd
 Nov. might now fall into a second Distress.

5 We Judg'd the Waters were assuag'd this morning to make the River fordable. Therefore about Ten we try'd the Experiment, and every Body got over Safe, except one man, whose Horse Slipt from a Rock as he forded over, and threw him into the River. But being able to swim, he was not Carry'd down the Stream very far before he recover'd the North Shore.

At the Distance of about 6 miles we pass'd CASCADE CREEK, and 3 Miles farther we came upon the Banks of the Dan, which we crost with much Difficulty, by reason the Water was risen much higher than when we forded it before.

Here the same unlucky Person happen'd to be duckt a Second time, and was a Second time Sav'd by Swimming. My own Horse too plunged in such a Manner that his Head was more than once under Water, but with much ado recover'd his Feet, tho' he made so low an obeisance, that the water ran fairly over my Saddle.

We continued our march as far as LOWLAND CREEK, where we took up our Lodging, for the benefit of the Canes and Winter Grass that grew upon the rich Grounds thereabouts. On our way thither we had the Misfortune to drop another Horse, though he carry'd nothing the whole day but his Saddle. We shewed the same favour to most of our Horses, for fear, if we did not do it, we should in a little time be turned into Beasts of Burthen ourselves.

Custom had now made travelling on foot so familiar, that we were able to walk ten Miles with Pleasure. This we cou'd do in our Boots, notwithstanding our way lay over rough Woods and uneven Grounds.

Our learning to walk in heavy Boots was the same advantage to us that learning to Dance High Dances in Wooden Shoes is

to the French, it made us most exceedingly Nimble without them.

1729
Nov.

The Indians, who have no way of travelling but on the Hoof, make nothing of going 25 miles a day, and carrying their little Neceſſaries at their backs, and Sometimes a Stout Pack of Skins into the Bargain. And very often they laugh at the Engliſh, who can't Stir to Next Neighbour without a Horſe, and ſay that 2 Legs are too much for ſuch lazy people, who cannot viſit their next neighbour without fix.

For their Parts, they were utter Strangers to all our Beaſts of Burthen or Carriage, before the Slothful Europeans came amongſt them. They had on no part of the American Continent, or in any of the Iſlands, either Horſes or Aſſes, Camels, Dromedaries or Elephants, to eaſe the Legs of the Original Inhabitants, or to lighten their Labour.

Indeed, in South America, and particularly in Chili, they have a uſeful animal call'd "paco." This creature reſembles a Sheep pretty much ; only in the Length of the Neck, and figure of the Head, it is more like a Camel. It is very near as high as the aſs, and the Indians there make uſe of it for carrying moderate Burthens.

The Fleece that grows upon it is very Valuable for the fineneſs, length and Gloſſineſs of the Wool. It has one remarkable Singularity, that the Hoofs of its fore-feet have three Cleſts, and thoſe behind no more than one. The Fleſh of this Animal is ſomething drier than our Mutton, but altogether as well taſted.

When it is Angry, it has no way of reſenting its wrongs, but by ſpitting in the Face of thoſe that provoke it : and if the Spawl happen to light on the bare Skin of any Perſon, it firſt creates an Itching, and afterwards a Scab, if no Remedy be applied. The way to manage theſe pacos, and make them tractable, is, to bore a hole in their ears, through which they put a Rope, and then guide them juſt as they pleaſe.

1729

Nov.

In Chili, they wear a beautiful kind of Stuff, with thread made of this Creature's Wool, which has a Gloss Superior to any Camlet, and is sold very dear in that country.

- 6 The Difficulty of finding the Horses among the tall Canes made it late before we decamp't. We traversed very hilly Grounds, but to make amends it was pretty clear of Underwood.

We avoided crossing the Dan twice by taking a Compass round the bent of it. There was no passing by the angle of the River without halting a moment to entertain our Eyes again with that Charming Prospect. When that pleasure was over we proceeded to Sable Creek, and encamped a little to the East of it.

The River thereabouts had a charming effect, its Banks being adorn'd with green canes, sixteen feet high, which make a Spring all the year, as well as plenty of Forage all the Winter.

One of the Men wounded an Old Buck, that was gray with years, and seem'd by the Reverend Marks he bore upon him, to confirm the current Opinion of that animal's Longevity. The Smart of his Wounds made him not only turn upon the Dogs, but likewise pursue them to some Distance with great Fury.

However he got away at last, though by the blood that issued from his Wound he could not run far before he fell, and without doubt made a comfortable repast for the wolves. However the Indian had better Fortune, and supply'd us with a fat Doe, and a young Bear two years old. At that Age they are in their Prime, and, if they be fat withal, they are a Morsel for a Cardinal.

All the Land we Travell'd over this day, and the day before, that is to say from the river Irvin to Sable Creek, is exceedingly rich, both on the Virginia Side of the Line, and that of Carolina. Besides whole Forests of Canes, that adorn the Banks of the River and Creeks thereabouts, the fertility of the Soil throws out such a Quantity of Winter Grass, that Horses and Cattle might keep themselves in Heart all the cold Season without the

help of any Fodder. Nor have the low Grounds only this advantage, but likewise the Higher Land, and particularly that which we call the Highland Pond, which is two miles broad, and of a length unknown. 1729
Nov.

I question not but there are 30,000 Acres at least, lying Altogether, as fertile as the Lands were said to be about Babylon, which yielded, if Herodotus tells us right, an Increase of no less than 2 or 300 for one. But this hath the Advantage of being a higher, and consequently a much healthier, Situation than that. So that a Colony of 1000 families might, with the help of Moderate Industry, pass their time very happily there.

Besides grazing and Tillage, which would abundantly compensate their Labour, they might plant Vineyards upon the Hills, in which Situation the richest Wines are always produc'd.

They might also propagate white Mulberry Trees, which thrive exceedingly in this climate, in order to the feeding of silkworms, and making of Raw Silk.

They might too produce Hemp, Flax and Cotton, in what quantity they pleas'd, not only for their own use, but likewise for Sale. Then they might raise very plentiful Orchards, of both Peaches and Apples, which contribute as much as any Fruit to the Luxury of Life. There is no Soil or Climate will yield better Rice than this, which is a Grain of prodigious Increase, and of very wholesome Nourishment. In short every thing will grow plentifully here to supply either the Wants or Wantonness of Man.

Nor can I so much as wish that the more tender Vegetables might grow here, such as Orange, Lemon, and Olive Trees, because then we shou'd lose the much greater benefit of the brisk North-West Winds, which purge the Air, and sweep away all the Malignant Fevers, which hover over countries that are always warm.

The Soil wou'd also want the advantages of Frost, and Snow,

1729
Nov. which by their Nitrous Particles contribute not a little to its Fertility. Besides the Inhabitants wou'd be depriv'd of the Variety and Sweet Vicissitude of the Season, which is much more delightful than one dull and Constant Succession of Warm Weather, diversify'd only by Rain and Sun Shine.

There is also another convenience, that happens to this country by cold weather—it destroys a great Number of Snakes, and other Venomous Reptiles, and troublesome Insects, or at least lays them to Sleep for Several Months, which otherwise would annoy us the whole year round, & multiply beyond all Enduring.

Though Oranges and Lemons are desirable Fruits, and Usefull enough in many Cases, yet, when the Want of them is Supply'd by others more useful, we have no cause to complain.

There is no climate that produces every thing, since the Deluge Wrencht the Poles of the World out of their Place, nor is it fit it shou'd be so, because it is the Mutual Supply one country receives from another, which creates a mutual Traffic and Intercourse amongst men. And in Truth, were it not for the correspondence, in order to make up each other's Wants, the Wars betwixt Bordering Nations, like those of the Indians and other barbarous People, wou'd be perpetual and irreconcilable.

As to Olive Trees, I know by Experience they will never stand the Sharpness of our Winters, but their Place may be Supply'd by the Plant call'd Sessamun, which yields an infinite quantity of large Seed, from whence a Sweet Oyl is prest, that is very wholesome and in use amongst the People of Lesser Asia. Likewise it is us'd in Egypt, preferably to oyl olive, being not so apt to make those that eat it Constantly break out into Scabs, as they do in many parts of Italy. This would grow very kindly here, and has already been planted with good Success in North Carolina, by way of Experiment.

7 After crossing the Dan, we made a march of 8 miles, over

1729
Nov.

Hills and Dales as far as the next Ford of that River. And now we were by Practice become such very able Footmen, that we easily outwalkt our Horses, and cou'd have marcht much farther, had it not been in pity to their Weakness. Besides here was plenty of Canes, which was reason enough to make us Shorten our Journey. Our Gunners did great Execution as they went along, killing no less than two Brace of Deer, and as many Wild Turkeys.

Though Practice will soon make a man of tolerable Vigour an able Footman, yet, as a Help to bear Fatigue I us'd to chew a Root of Ginseng as I Walk't along. This kept up my Spirits, and made me trip away as nimbly in my half Jack-Boots as younger men cou'd in their Shoes. This Plant is in high Esteem in China, where it sells for its Weight in Silver. Indeed it does not grow there, but in the Mountains of Tartary, to which Place the emperor of China Sends 10,000 Men every Year on purpose to gather it. But it grows so scattering there, that even so many hands can bring home no great Quantity. Indeed it is a Vegetable of so many vertues, that Providence has planted it very thin in every Country that has the happiness to produce it. Nor indeed is Mankind worthy of so great a Blessing, since Health and long Life are commonly Abus'd to ill Purposes. This noble Plant grows likewise at the Cape of Good Hope, where it is Call'd kanna, and is in wonderful Esteem among the Hottentots. It grows also on the northern continent of America, near the Mountains, but as Sparingly as Truth & Public Spirit. It answers exactly both to the Figure and vertues of that which grows in Tartary, so that there can be no doubt of its being the Same.


Its vertues are, that it gives an uncommon Warmth and Vigour to the Blood, and frisks the Spirits, beyond any other Cordial. It cheers the Heart even of a Man that has a bad Wife, and makes him look down with great Composure on the

1729
Nov.

crosses of the World. It promotes insensible Perspiration, dissolves all Phlegmatick and Viscous Humours, that are apt to obstruct the Narrow channels of the Nerves. It helps the Memory, and would quicken even Helvetian dulness. 'Tis friendly to the Lungs, much more than Scolding itself. It comforts the Stomach, and Strengthens the Bowels, preventing all Colicks and Fluxes. In one Word, it will make a Man live a great while, and very well while he does live. And what is more, it will even make Old Age amiable, by rendering it lively, chearful, and good-humour'd. However 'tis of little use in the Feats of Love, as a great prince once found, who hearing of its invigorating Quality, sent as far as China for some of it, though his ladys could not boast of any Advantage thereby.

We gave the Indian the Skins of all the Deer that he Shot himself, and the Men the Skins of what they Kill'd. And every Evening after the Fires were made, they stretcht them very tight upon Sticks, and dry'd them. This, by a Nocturnal Fire, appear'd at first a very odd Spectacle, every thing being dark and gloomy round about. After they are Dry'd in this manner they may be folded up without Damage, till they come to be dress'd according to Art.

The Indians dress them with Deer's Brains, and so do the English here by their example. For Expedition's Sake they often Stretch their Skins over Smoak in order to dry them, which makes them smell so disagreeably that a Rat must have a good Stomach to gnaw them in that condition; nay, 'tis said, while that Perfume continues in a Pair of Leather Breeches, the Person that wears them will be in no Danger of that Villainous little insect the French call Morpion. And now I am upon the subject of Insects, it may not be improper to mention some few Remedies against those that are most Vexatious in this Climate. There are two Sorts without Doors, that are great Nuisances, the Tikes, and the Horse Flies. The Tikes are either Deer-

tikes, or those that annoy the Cattle. The first kind are long, and take a very Strong Gripe, being most in remote Woods, above the Inhabitants. 1729
Nov. 

The other are round, and more gently insinuate themselves into the Flesh, being in all places where Cattle are frequent. Both these Sorts are apt to be troublesome during the Warm Season, but have such an Aversion to Penny Royal, that they will attaque no Part that is rubb'd with the Juice of that fragrant Vegetable. And a Strong Decoction of this is likewise the most effectual Remedy against Seed-tikes, which bury themselves in your Legs, when they are so small you can hardly discern them without a MICROSCOPE.

The Horse Flies are not only a great Grievance to Horses, but likewise to those that ride them. These little Vixons confine themselves chiefly to the Woods, and are most in moist Places. Tho' this Insect be no bigger than an Ordinary Fly, it bites very Smartly, darting its little Proboscis into the Skin the instant it lights upon it. These are offensive only in the hot months, and in the Day time, when they are a great Nuisance to Travellers; insomuch that it is no Wonder they were formerly employed for one of the Plagues of Egypt. But Dittany, which is to be had in the Woods all the while those Insects remain in Vigor, is a Sure Defense against them. For this purpose, if you stick a Bunch of it on the Head-Stall of your Bridle, they will be sure to keep a respectful Distance.

Thus, in what part of the Woods soever any thing mischievous or troublesome is found, kind Providence is sure to provide a Remedy. And 'tis probably one great Reason why God was pleas'd to create these, and many other Vexatious Animals, that Men sho'd exercise their Wits and Industry, to guard themselves against them.

Bears' Oyl is used by the Indians as a General Defence, against every Species of Vermin. Among the rest, they say it

1729
Nov.

keeps both Bugs and Musquetas from assaulting their Persons, which wou'd otherwise devour Such uncleanly People. Yet Bears' Grease has no strong Smell, as that Plant had which the Egyptians formerly us'd against musquetas, resembling our palma Christi, the Juice of which smelled so disagreeably, that the Remedy was worse than the Disease.

Against musquetas, in Egypt, the Richer Sort us'd to build lofty Towers, with Bed-chambers in the Tops of them, that they might rest undisturbed. 'Tis certain that these Insects are no High Fliers, because their Wings are weak and their Bodies so light, that if they mount never so little, the wind blows them quite away from their Course, and they become an easy prey to the Martins, East India Bats, and other Birds that fly about in continual Quest of them.

- 8 As we had twice more to cross the Dan over two fords, that lay no more than 7 miles from each other, we judg'd the Distance wou'd not be much greater to go round the Bent of it. Accordingly we sent the Indian and two white Men that way, who came up with us in the Evening, after fetching a compass of about 12 Miles.

They told us that, about a mile from our last Camp, they passed a creek fortify'd with Steep Cliffs, which therefore gain'd the name of Cliff Creek. Near 3 miles beyond that they forded a Second Creek, on the Margin of which grew abundance of Tall canes and this was call'd Hix's creek, from one of the Discoverers. Between these two creeks lies a level of exceeding rich Land, full of large Trees, and cover'd with black Mould, as fruitful, if we believe them, as that which is yearly overflow'd by the Nile.

We who marched the nearest way upon the Line found the Ground rising and falling between the two Fords of the Dan, which almost broke our own Wind, and the Hearts of our Jaded Palfreys. When we had passed the last Ford, it was a Sensible

Joy to find ourselves Safe over all the Waters that might cut off our Retreat. And we had the greater Reason to be Thankfull, because so late in the Year it was very unusual to find the rivers so fordable. 1729
Nov.

We catcht a large Tarapin in the River, which is one kind of Turtle. The flesh of it is wholesome, and good for Consumptive People. It lays a great Number of Eggs, not larger but rounder than those of Pigeons. These are Soft, but withal so tough that 'tis difficult to break them, yet are very Sweet and invigorating, so that some Wives recommend them earnestly to their Husbands.

One of the Men, by an Overstrain, had unhappily got a Running of the Reins, for which I gave him every Morning a Little Sweet Gum dissolv'd in Water, with good success. This gum distils from a large Tree, call'd the Sweet-Gum Tree, very Common in Virginia, and is as healing in its Virtue as Balm of Gilead, or the Balsams of Tolu and of Peru. It is likewise a most Agreeable perfume, very little inferior to Ambergris.

And now I have mention'd Ambergris, I hope it will not be thought an unprofitable digression, to give a faithful Account how it is produced, in Order to reconcile the various Opinions concerning it. It is now certainly found to be the Dung of the Sper Maceti Whale, which is at first very black and unfavoury. But after having been wash'd for some Months in the Sea, and blanch'd in the Sun, it comes at length to be of a Gray colour, and from a most offensive Smell, contracts the finest fragrancy in the World.

Besides the Fragrancy of this Animal Substance, 'tis a very rich and innocent Cordial, which raises the spirits without Stupifying them afterwards, like Opium, or intoxicating them like Wine. The Animal Spirits are amazingly refreshed by this Cordial, without the Danger of any ill consequence, and if Hus-

1729
Nov.

bands were now and then to dissolve a little of it in their Broth, their Consorts might be the better for it, as well as themselves.

In the Bahama islands (where a great Quantity is found, by reason the Sperma Ceti Whales resort thither continually,) it is us'd as an Antidote against the Venomous Fish which abound thereabouts, wherewith the People are apt to Poison themselves.

We are not only oblig'd to that Whale for this rich perfume, but also for the Sper Maceti itself, which is the Fat of that Fish's Head boil'd and purg'd from all its impurities. What remains is of a balsamick and deterfive Quality, very friendly to the Lungs, and usefull in many other Cafes.

The Indian had kill'd a fat Doe in the compafs he took round the Elbow of the River, but was content to Prime it only, by reason it was too far off to lug the whole Carcass upon his Back. This, and a Brace of Wild Turkeys which our Men had Shot, made up all our Bill of Fare this Evening, but could only afford a Philosophical Meal to so many craving Stomachs.

The Horses were now so lean that any thing would gall those that carry'd the least Burthen; no wonder then if Several of them had sore Backs, especially now the Pads of the Saddles and Packs were press'd flat with long and constant Use. This would have been another Misfortune, had we not been provided with an easy Remedy for it.

One of the Commissioners, believing that Such Accidents might happen in a far Journey, had furnisht himself with Plasters of Strong Glue spread pretty thick. We laid on these, after making them running hot, which, Sticking fast, never fell off till the Sore was perfectly heal'd. In the mean time it defended the part so well, that the Saddle might bear upon it without Danger of further Injury.

9 We reckon'd our Selves now pretty well out of the Latitude of Bears, to the great Grief of most of the company. There

1729
Nov.

was Still Mast enough left in the Woods to keep the Bears from drawing so near to the Inhabitants. They like not the neighbourhood of Merciless Man, till Famine compels them to it. They are all Black in this part of the World, and so is their Dung, but it will make Linnen white, being tolerably good Soap, without any Preparation but only drying.

These Bears are of a Moderate Size, whereas within the Polar Circles they are white, and much larger. Those of the Southern Parts of Muscovy are of a Russet Colour, but among the SAMOEIDS, as well as in GREENLAND and NOVA ZEMBLA, they are as white as the snow they converse with, and by some Accounts are as large as a Moderate Ox.

The Excessive Cold of that Climate sets their Appetites so Sharp, that they will Attack a Man without Ceremony, and even climb up a Ship's Side to come at him. They range about and are very Mischievous all the time the Sun is above the Horizon, which is something more than Five Months; but after the Sun is Set for the rest of the Year, they retire into Holes, or bury themselves under the Snow, and Sleep away the Dark Season without any Sustenance at all. 'Tis pitty our Beggars and Pickpockets Cou'd not do the Same.

Our Journey this day was above 12 Miles, and more than half the way terribly hamper'd with Bushes. We tir'd another Horse, which we were oblig'd to leave two miles short of where we Encampt, and indeed Several others were upon the Careen almost every Step. Now we wanted one of those celebrated Musicians of Antiquity, who, they tell us, among many other Wonders of their Art, cou'd play an air which, by its Animateing Briskness wou'd make a Jaded Horse caper and curvet much better than any Whip, Spur, or even than Swearing. Tho' I fear our poor Beasts were so harass'd that it wou'd have been beyond the Skill of Orpheus himself so much as to make them prick up their ears.

1729
Nov.

For Proof of the Marvellous Power of Music among the Ancients, some Historians say, that one of those Skilful Masters took upon him to make the great Alexander start up from his Seat, and handle his Javelin, whether he would or not, by the force of a sprightly Tune, which he knew how to play to Him. The King ordered the man to bring his Instrument, and then fixing himself firmly in his chair, and determining not to Stir, he bade him to Strike up as soon as he pleas'd. The Musician obey'd, and presently rous'd the Hero's Spirits with such Warlike Notes, that he was constrain'd, in Spite of all his Resolution, to spring up and fly to his Javelin with great martial Fury.

We can the easier credit these Prophane Stories by what we find recorded in the Oracles of Truth, where we are told the Wonders David performed by Sweetly touching his Harp. He made nothing of driving the Evil Spirit out of Saul, tho' a certain rabbi assures us he could not do so much by his Wife, MICHAL, when she happen'd to be in her Ayrs.

The greatest Instance we have of the Power of Modern Music is that which cures those who in Italy are bitten by the little Spider called the Tarantula. The whole method of which is perform'd in the following manner.

In Apulia it is a common Misfortune for People to be bitten by the Tarantula, and most about Taranto and Gallipoli. This is a gray spider, not very large, with a narrow Streak of white along the Back. It is no wonder there are many of these Villainous Insects, because, by a Ridiculous Superstition 'tis accounted great Inhumanity to kill them. They believe, it seems, that if the Spider come to a Violent Death, all those who had been bitten by it will certainly have a Return of their Frenzy every Year as long as they live. But if it dye a Natural Death, the Patient will have a chance to recover in two or three Years.

The Bite of the tarantula gives no more pain than the Bite of a musqueta, and makes little or no inflammation on the Part,

especially when the Disaster happens in April or May; but, its
Venom encreasing with the Heat of the Season, has more fatal
Consequences in July and August. The Persons who are so
unhappy as to be bitten in those Warm Months, fall down on
the Place in a few Minutes, and lye senseless for a considerable
time, and when they come to themselves feel horrible Pains, are
very Sick at their Stomachs, and in a Short time break out into
foul Sores; but those who are bitten in the Milder Months have
much gentler Symptoms. They are longer before the Distemper
Shows itself, and then they have a small Disorder in their Senses,
are a little sick, and perhaps have some Moderate Breakings-out.

1729
Nov.

However, in both cases, the Patient keeps upon the Bed, not
caring to stir, till he is rous'd by a Tune, proper for his particu-
lar case. Therefore, as soon as the Symptoms discover them-
selves, a Tarantula Doctor is sent for, who, after viewing care-
fully the condition of the Person, first tries one Tune and then
another, until he is so fortunate as to hit the Phrenetic turn of
the Patient. No sooner does this happen but he begins to Wag
a finger, then a Hand, and afterwards a Foot, till at last he
springs up and dances Round the Room, with a Surprising Agility,
rolling his Eyes and looking wild the whole time. This dancing-
Fit lasts commonly about 25 minutes, by which time he will be
all in a Lather. Then he sits down, falls a laughing, and re-
turns to his Senses. So Plentiful a Perspiration discharges so
much of the Venom as will keep off the Return of the Distem-
per for a whole Year. Then it will Visit Him again, and must
be remov'd in the Same Merry Manner. But three dancing
Bouts will do the Business, unless, peradventure, the Spider, ac-
cording to the Vulgar Notion, has been put to a Violent Death.

The Tunes play'd to expell this Whimsicall Disorder, are of
the Jigg-kind, and exceed not 15 in number. The Apulians
are frequently dancing off the Effects of this Poison, and no
Remedy is more commonly apply'd to any other Distemper else-

1729
Nov.

where, than those Sprightly Tunes are to the Bite of the Tarantula in that part of Italy.

It is remarkable that these Spiders have a greater Spight to the Natives of the Place than they have to Strangers, and Women are oftener bitten than Men. Tho' there may be a Reason for the last, because Women are more confin'd to the House, where these Spyders keep, and their coats make them liable to Attacks unseen, whereas the Men can more easily discover, and brush them off their Legs. Nevertheless, both Sexes are cur'd the Same way, and thereby Show the Wonderful Effects of Music.

Considering how far we had walkt, and consequently how hungry we were, we found but Short commons when we came to our Quarters. One Brace of Turkeys was all the Game we cou'd meet with, which almost needed a Miracle to enable them to Suffice so many Voracious Appetites. However, they just made a Shift to keep Famine, and consequently Mutiny, out of the Camp. At Night we lodg'd upon the Banks of Buffalo Creek, where none of us cou'd complain of loss of Rest, for having eaten too heavy and Luxurious a Supper.

10 In a Dearth of Provisions our Chaplain pronounc'd it lawful to make bold with the Sabbath, and send a Party out a-Hunting. They fired the Dry Leaves in a Ring of five Miles' circumference, which, burning inwards, drove all the Game to the Centre, where they were easily killed.

It is really a pitiful Sight to see the extreme Distress the poor deer are in, when they find themselves Surrounded with this Circle of Fire; they weep and Groan like a Human Creature, yet can't move the compassion of those hard-hearted People, who are about to murder them. This unmerciful Sport is called Fire Hunting, and is much practis'd by the Indians and Frontier Inhabitants, who sometimes, in the Eagerness of their Diversion, are Punish't for their cruelty, and are hurt by one another when they Shoot across at the Deer which are in the Middle.

What the Indians do now by a Circle of Fire, the ancient Persians performed formerly by a circle of Men : and the same is practis'd at this day in Germany upon extraordinary Occasions, when any of the Princes of the Empire have a Mind to make a General Hunt, as they call it. At such times they order a vast Number of People to Surround a whole Territory. Then Marching inwards in close Order, they at last force all the Wild Beasts into a Narrow Compass, that the Prince and his Company may have the Diversion of Slaughtering as many as they please with their own hands. 1729
Nov.

Our Hunters massacred two Brace of Deer after this unfair way, of which they brought us one Brace whole, and only the Primings of the rest. So many were absent on this Occasion, that we who remained excus'd the Chaplain from the Trouble of spending his Spirits by Preaching to so thin a Congregation. One of the men, who had been an old Indian Trader, brought me a Stem of Silk Grass, which was about as big as my little Finger. But, being so late in the Year that the Leaf was fallen off, I am not able to describe the Plant.

The Indians use it in all their little Manufactures, twisting a Thread of it that is prodigiously Strong. Of this they make their Baskets and the Aprons which their Women wear about their Middles, for Decency's Sake. These are long enough to wrap quite round them and reach down to their Knees, with a Fringe on the under part by way of Ornament.

They put on this modest covering with so much art, that the most impertinent curiosity can't in the Negligentest of their Motions or Postures make the least discovery. As this species of Silk Grass is much Stronger than Hemp, I make no doubt but Sail Cloth and Cordage might be made of it with considerable Improvement.

We had all been so refresh'd by our day of rest, that we decamp'd earlier than Ordinary, and passed the Several Fords of 11

1729 Hico River. The Woods were thick great Part of this Day's
 Nov. Journey, so that we were forced to scuffle hard to advance 7
 miles, being equal in fatigue to double that distance of Clear and
 Open Grounds.

We took up our Quarters upon Sugar-tree Creek, in the same camp we had lain in when we came up, and happen'd to be entertained at Supper with a Rarity we had never had the fortune to meet with before, during the whole Expedition.

A little wide of this creek, one of the men had the Luck to meet with a Young Buffalo of two Years Old. It was a Bull, which, notwithstanding he was no older, was as big as an ordinary Ox. His Legs are very thick and very Short, and his Hoofs exceeding broad. His Back rose into a kind of Bunch a little above the Shoulders, which I believe contributes not a little to that creature's enormous Strength. His Body is vastly deep from the shoulders to the Brisket, sometimes 6 feet in those that are full grown. The portly figure of this Animal is disgrac'd by a Shabby little Tail, not above 12 Inches long. This he cocks up on end whenever he's in a Passion, and, instead of lowing or bellowing, grunts with no better grace than a Hog.

The Hair growing on his Head and Neck is long and Shagged, and so Soft that it will Spin into Thread not unlike Mohair, which might be wove into a Sort of Camlet. Some People have Stockings knit of it, that would have serv'd an Israelite during his forty Years' march thro' the Wilderness.

Its horns are short and Strong, of which the Indians make large Spoons, which they say will Split and fall to Pieces whenever Poison is put into them. Its Colour is a dirty Brown, and its hide so thick that it is Scarce penetrable. However, it makes very Spongy Sole Leather by the ordinary method of Tanning, tho' this fault might by good Contrivance be mended.

As thick as this poor Beast's Hide was, a Bullet made Shift

to enter it and fetch him down. It was found all alone, tho' Buffaloes Seldom are. They usually range about in Herds, like other cattle, and, tho' they differ something in figure, are certainly of the Same Species. There are two Reasons for this Opinion: the Flesh of both has exactly the same taste, and the mixed Breed betwixt both, they say, will generate. All the Difference I could perceive between the Flesh of Buffalo and Common Beef was, that the Flesh of the first was much Yellower than that of the other, and the Lean something tougher.

1729
Nov.

The Men were so delighted with this new dyet, that the Gridiron and Frying-Pan had no more rest all night, than a poor Husband Subject to Curtain Lectures. Buffaloes may be easily tamed when they are taken Young. The best way to catch them is to carry a Milch Mare into the Woods, and when you find a Cow and Calf, to kill the Cow, and then having catch'd the Calf, to Suckle it upon the Mare. After once or twice Sucking Her, it will follow her Home, and become as gentle as another calf.

If we cou'd get into a breed of them, they might be made very usefull, not only for the Dairy, by giving an Ocean of Milk, but also for drawing vast and cumbersome Weights by their prodigious Strength. These, with the other Advantages I mention'd before, wou'd make this sort of Cattle more profitable to the owner, than any other we are acquainted with, though they would need a world of Provender.

Before we marcht this Morning, every man took care to pack ¹² up some Buffalo Steaks in his Wallet, besides what he crammed into his Belly. When Provisions were Plenty, we always found it Difficult to get out early, being too much Embarrass't with a long-winded Breakfast.

However, by the Strength of our Beef, we made a shift to walk about 12 Miles, crossing Blewing and Tewaw-homini Creeks.

1729
Nov.

And because this last Stream receiv'd its Appellation from the Disaster of a Tuscarora Indian, it will not be Straggling much out of the way to say something of that Particular Nation.

These Indians were heretofore very numerous and powerful, making, within time of Memory, at least a Thousand Fighting Men. Their Habitation, before the War with Carolina, was on the North Branch of Neuse River, commonly call'd Connecta Creek, in a pleasant and fruitful Country. But now the few that are left of that Nation live on the North Side of MORATUCK, which is all that Part of Roanok below the great Falls, towards ALBEMARLE Sound.

Formerly there were Seven Towns of these Savages, lying not far from each other, but now their Number is greatly reduc'd.

The Trade they have had the Misfortune to drive with the English has furnisht them constantly with Rum, which they have used so immoderately, that, what with the Distempers, and what with the Quârrrels it begat amongst them, it has proved a double Destruction.

But the greatest Consumption of these savages happen'd by the war about Twenty-Five years ago, on Account of some Injustice the Inhabitants of that Province had done them about their Lands.

It was on that Provocation they resentet their wrongs a little too severely upon Mr. Lawfon, who, under Colour of being Surveyor gen'l, had encroacht too much upon their Territories, at which they were so enrag'd, that they waylaid him, and cut his Throat from Ear to Ear, but at the same time releas'd the Baron de Graffenried, whom they had Seized for Company, because it appear'd plainly he had done them no Wrong.

This Blow was followed by some other Bloody Actions on the Part of the Indians, which brought on the War, wherein many of them were but off, and many were oblig'd to flee for Refuge to the Senecas, so that now there remain so few, that

they are in Danger of being quite exterminated by the Catawbas, their mortal Enemies. 1729
Nov.

These Indians have a very odd Tradition amongst them, that many years ago, their Nation was grown so dishonest, that no man cou'd keep any Goods, or so much as his loving Wife to himself. That, however, their God, being unwilling to root them out for their crimes, did them the honour to send a Messenger from Heaven to instruct them, and set Them a perfect Example of Integrity and kind Behavior towards one another.

But this holy Person, with all his Eloquence and Sanctity of Life, was able to make very little Reformation amongst them. Some few Old Men did listen a little to his Wholesome Advice, but all the Young fellows were quite incorrigible. They not only Neglected his Precepts, but derided and Evil Entreated his Person. At last, taking upon Him to reprove some Young Rakes of the Conechta Clan very sharply for their impiety, they were so provok'd at the Freedom of his Rebukes, that they tied him to a Tree, and shot him with Arrows through the Heart. But their God took instant Vengeance on all who had a hand in that Monstrous Act, by Lightning from Heaven, & has ever since visited their Nation with a continued Train of Calamities, nor will he ever leave off punishing, and wasting their People, till he shall have blotted every living Soul of them out of the World.

Our Hunters shot nothing this whole day but a straggling Bear, which happen'd to fall by the Hand of the very Person who had been lately disarm'd and put to flight, for which he declar'd War against the whole Species.

We pursued our Journey with all Diligence, and forded 13 Ohimpamony Creek about Noon, and from thence proceeded to Yatapsco, which we cou'd not cross without difficulty. The Beavers had dammed up the Water much higher than we found

1729
Nov.

it at our going up, so that we were oblig'd to lay a Bridge over a part that was shallower than the rest, to facilitate our passage.

Beavers have more of Instinct, that Half-Brother of Reason, than any other Animal, especially in matters of Self-Preservation. In their Houses they always contrive a Sally-Port, both towards the Land and towards the Water, that so they may escape by One, if their Retreat shou'd happen to be cut off at the other.

They perform all their Works in the Dead of Night, to avoid Discovery, and are kept diligently to it by the Master Beaver, which by his age or strength has gain'd to himself an Authority over the rest. If any of the Gang happen to be lazy, or will not exert himself to the utmost in felling of Trees, or dragging them the place where they are made use of, this Superintendent will not fail to chastise him with the Flat of the Tail, wherewith he is able to give unmerciful strokes.

They lie Snug in their Houses all day, unless some unneighbourly Miller chance to disturb their repose, by demolishing their Dams for supplying his Mill with Water.

It is rare to see one of them, and the Indians for that Reason have hardly any way to take them, but by laying Snares near the place where they dam up the Water. But the English Hunters have found out a more effectual Method, by using the following receipt. Take the Large Pride of the Beaver, Squeeze all the Juice out of it, then take the small Pride, and Squeeze out about 5 or 6 Drops. Take the inside of Sassafras Bark, Powder it, and mix it with the Liquor, and place this Bait conveniently for your Steel Trap.

The Story of their biting off their Testicles to compound for their Lives, when they are pursued, is a story taken upon trust by Pliny, like many others. Nor is it the Beavers' Testicles that carry the Perfume, but they have a Pair of Glands just within the Fundament, as Sweet as Musk, that perfume their Dung,

and communicate a strong scent to their Testicles, by being plac'd near them.

1729
Nov.

It is true Several creatures have Strange instincts for their Preservation, as the Egyptian Frog, we are told by Elian, will carry a whole Joint of a Reed across its Mouth, that it may not be swallow'd by the ibis.

And this Long-neckt fowl will give itself a clyster with its Beak, whenever it finds itself too costive or feverish. The Dogs of that Country lap the Water of the Nile in a full Trot, that they may not be Snapped by the Crocodiles. Both Beavers and Wolves, we know, when one of their Legs is caught in a Steel Trap, will bite it off, that they may escape with the rest. The Flesh of the Beavers is tough and dry, all but the Tail, which, like the Parrot's Tongue, was one of the far-fetched Rarities with which Heliogabalus used to furnish his Luxurious Table.

The Fur of these creatures is very valuable, especially in the more Northern Countries, where it is longer and finer. This the Dutch have lately contriv'd to mix with their Wool, and Weave into a Sort of Drugget, that is not only warm, but wonderfully light and Soft. They also make Gloves and Stockings of it, that keep out the Cold almost as well as the Fur itself, and do not look quite so Savage.

There is a deal of Rich low Ground on Yapatso Creek, but I believe liable to be overflow'd in a fresh. However, it might be proper enough for Rice, which receives but little Injury from Water.

We encamp't on the Banks of Massamony Creek, after a Journey of more than 11 Miles. By the way we Shot a fat Doe and a wild Turkey, which fed us all plentifully. And we have reason to say, by our own happy Experience, that no man need to despair of his daily Bread in the Woods, whose faith is but half so large as his Stomach.

1729
Nov.

Being at length happily arriv'd within 20 Miles of the uppermost Inhabitants, we despatcht two Men who had the ablest Horses, to go before, and get a Beef kill'd and some Bread bak'd
 14 to refresh their Fellow Travellers, upon their arrival. They had likewise Orders to hire an express to carry a Letter to the Governor, giving an Account that we were all returned in Safety. This was the more necessary, because we had been so long absent that many now began to fear we were, by this time, Scalpt and barbacu'd by the Indians.

We decamp't with the rest of the People about ten a clock, and marched near 12 Miles. In our way we Cross'd Nutbush Creek, and 4 Miles farther we came upon a beautiful Branch of Great Creek, where we took up our Quarters. The Tent was pitched upon an Eminence, which overlookt a wide Piece of low Grounds, cover'd with Reeds and watered by a Crystal Stream, gliding thro' the Middle of it. On the Other Side of this delightful Valley, which was about half a Mile wide, rose a Hill that terminated the View, and in the figure of a Semicircle clos'd in upon the opposite Side of the Valley. This had a most agreeable Effect upon the Eye, and wanted nothing but Cattle grazing in the Meadow, and Sheep and Goats feeding on the Hill, to make it a Compleat Rural LANDSCAPE.

The Indian kill'd a Fawn, which, being upon its growth, was not fat, but made some amends by being tender. He also Shot an Otter, but our People were now better fed than to eat such Coarse Food. The truth of it is, the Flesh of this Creature has a rank Fishy taste, and for that reason might be a proper Regale for the Samoeids, who drink the CZAR OF MUSCOVY's health and toast their Mistresses in a Bumper of Train Oil.

The Carthusians, to save their Vow of eating no Flesh, pronounce this Amphibious Animal to be a Fish, and feed upon it as such, without Wounding their Consciences.

The Skin of the Otter is very Soft, and the Swedes make

Caps and Socks of it, not only for Warmth, but also because they fancy it Strengthens the Nerves, and is good against all Distempers of the Brain. 1729
Nov.

The otter is a great Devourer of Fish, which are its Natural Food, and whenever it betakes itself to a Vegetable Dyet, it is as some high-Spirited Wives obey their Husbands, by pure Necessity. They dive after their Prey, tho' they can't continue long under Water, but thrust their Noses up to the Surface now and then for Breath. They are great Enemies to Weirs Set up in the Rivers to catch Fish, devouring or biting to pieces all they find there. Nor is it either easy to fright them from this kind of Robbery, or to destroy them. The best way I cou'd ever find was to float an Old Wheel just by the Weir, and so soon as the Otter has taken a large Fish, he will get upon the Wheel to eat it more at his ease, which may give you an Opportunity of firing upon him from the Shoar.

One of our People Shot a large Gray Squirrel with a very Bushy Tail, a singular use of which our merry Indian discover'd to us. He said whenever this little Animal has occasion to cross a run of Water, he launches a Chip or Piece of Bark into the Water, on which he embarks, and, holding up his Tail to the wind, he Sails over very Safely. If This be true, it is probable men learnt at first the use of Sails from these ingenious little Animals, as the Hottentots learnt the Physical use of most of their Plants from the Baboons.

About three Miles from our Camp we passed GREAT CREEK, ¹⁵ and then, after traversing very barren grounds for 5 Miles together, we cross'd the Trading Path, and soon after had the pleasure of reaching the uppermost Inhabitant. This was a Plantation belonging to colonel Mumford, where our Men almost burst themselves with Potatoes and Milk. Yet as great a Curiosity as a House was to us Foresters, still we chose to lie in the Tent, as being much the cleaner and sweeter Lodging.

1729

Nov.

The Tradeing Path above-mention'd receives its Name from being the Route the Traders take with their Caravans, when they go to traffick with the Catawbas and other Southern Indians. The Catawbas live about 250 Miles beyond Roanoke River, and yet our Traders find their Account in transporting Goods from Virginia to trade with them at their own Towne.

The Common Method of carrying on this Indian Commerce is as follows: Gentlemen send for Goods proper for such a Trade from England, and then either Venture them out at their own Risk to the Indian Towns, or else credit some Traders with them of Substance and Reputation, to be paid in Skins at a certain Price agreed betwixt them.

The Goods for the Indian Trade consist chiefly in Guns, Powder, Shot, Hatchets, (which the Indians call Tomahawks,) Kettles, red & blue Planes, Duffields, Stroudwater blankets, and some Cutlary Wares, Brass Rings and other Trinkets.

These Wares are made up into Packs and Carry'd upon Horses, each Load being from 150 to 200 Pounds, with which they are able to travel about 20 Miles a day, if Forage happen to be plentiful.

Formerly a Hundred Horses have been employ'd in one of these Indian Caravans, under the Conduct of 15 or 16 Persons only, but now the Trade is much impair'd, insomuch that they seldom go with half that Number.

The Course from Roanoke to the Catawbas is laid down nearest South-west, and lies thro' a fine Country, that is Water'd by Several beautiful Rivers.

Those of the greatest Note are, first, Tar river, which is the upper Part of Pamptico, Flat river, Little river and Eno river, all three Branches of Neuse.

Between Eno and Saxapahaw rivers are the Haw old fields, which have the Reputation of containing the most fertile high land in this part of the World, lying in a Body of about 50,000 acres.

This Saxapahaw is the upper Part of Cape Fair River, the falls of which lye many Miles below the Trading Path.

1729
Nov.

Some Mountains overlook this Rich Spot of Land, from whence all the Soil washes down into the Plane, and is the Cause of its exceeding Fertility. Not far from thence the Path crosses ARAMANCHY River, a branch of Saxapahaw, and about 40 Miles beyond that, Deep River, which is the N Branch of Pedee. Then 40 miles beyond that, the Path intersects the Yadkin, which is there half a Mile over, and is supposed to be the South Branch of the same Pedee.

The Soil is exceedingly rich on both sides the Yadkin, abounding in rank Grass and prodigiously large Trees; and for plenty of Fish, Fowl and Venison, is inferior to No Part of the Northern Continent. There the Traders commonly lie Still for some days, to recruit their Horses' Flesh as well as to recover their own Spirits. Six Miles further is Crane Creek, so nam'd from its being the Rendezvous of great Armies of Cranes, which wage a more cruel War at this day, with the Frogs and the Fish, than they us'd to do with the Pigmies in the Days of Homer.

About three-score Miles more bring you to the first Town of the Catawbass, call'd Nauvassa, situated on the banks of Santee river. Besides this Town there are five Others belonging to the same Nation, lying all on the same Stream, within the Distance of 20 Miles.

These Indians were all call'd formerly by the general Name of the Usherees, and were a very Numerous and Powerful People. But the frequent Slaughters made upon them by the Northern Indians, and, what has been still more destructive by far, the Intemperance and Foul Distempers introduc'd amongst them by the Carolina Traders, have now reduc'd their Numbers to little More than 400 Fighting Men, besides Women & Children. It is a charming Place where they live, the Air very Wholefome, the Soil fertile, and the Winters ever mild and Serene.

1729
Nov.

In Santee river, as in Several others of Carolina, a Small Kind of allegator is frequently seen, which perfumes the Water with a Musky Smell. They Seldom exceed Eight Feet in Length in these parts, whereas, near the Equinoctial, they come up to twelve or Fourteen. And the heat of the Climate don't only make them bigger, but more Fierce and Voracious. They watch the Cattle there when they come to drink and Cool themselves in the River; and because they are not able to drag them into the Deep Water, they make up by Stratagem what they want in Force. They Swallow great Stones, the Weight of which being added to their Strength, enables them to tug a Moderate Cow under Water, and as soon as they have drown'd her, they discharge the Stones out of their Maw and then feast upon the Carcass. However, as Fierce and as Strong as these Monsters are, the Indians will Surprise them Napping as they float upon the Surface, get astride upon their Necks, then whip a short piece of wood like a Truncheon into their Jaws, & holding the Ends with their two hands, hinder them from diving by keeping their mouths open, and when they are almost Spent, they will make to the shoar, where their Riders knock them on the Head and Eat them. This Amphibious Animal is a Smaller kind of Crocodile, having the Same Shape exactly, only the Crocodile of the Nile is twice as long, being when full grown from 20 to Thirty Feet. This Enormous Length is the more to be wonder'd at, because the Crocodile is hatcht from an Egg very little larger than that of a Goose. It has a long Head, which it can open very wide, with very Sharp & Strong teeth. Their Eyes are Small, their Legs Short, with Claws upon their Feet. Their Tail makes half the Length of their Body, and the whole is guarded with hard impenetrable Scales, except the Belly, which is much Softer and Smoother. They keep much upon the Land in the day time, but towards the Evening retire into the Water to avoid the Cold Dews of the Night. They run pretty

fast right forward, but are very awkward and Slow in turning, 1729
by reason of their unwieldy Length. It is an Error that they Nov.
have no Tongue, without which they cou'd hardly Swallow
their Food; but in eating they move the upper Jaw only, Con-
trary to all other Animals. The way of catching them in Egypt
is, with a Strong Hook fixt to the End of a chain and baited
with a joynt of Pork, which they are very fond of. But a live
Hog is generally tyed near, the Cry of which allures them to
the Hook. This Account of the Crocodile will agree in most
particulars with the Alligator, only the Bigness of the last can-
not entitle it to the Name of "Leviathan," which Job gave
formerly to the crocodile, and not to the Whale, as some Inter-
preters wou'd make us believe.

So Soon as the Catawba Indians are inform'd of the Approach
of the Virginia Caravans, they send a Detachment of their
Warriors to bid them Welcome, and escort them Safe to their
Town, where they are receiv'd with great Marks of Distinction.
And their Courtesys to the VIRGINIA Traders, I dare say, are
very Sincere, because they sell them better Goods and better
Pennyworths than the Traders of Carolina. They commonly
reside among the Indians till they have barter'd their Goods
away for Skins, with which they load their Horses and come
back by the Same Path they went.

There are generally some Carolina Traders that constantly
live among the Catawbas, and pretend to Exercise a dictatorial
Authority over them. These petty Rulers don't only teach the
honestest Savages all sorts of Debauchery, but are unfair in their
dealings, and use them with all kinds of Oppression. Nor has
their Behaviour been at all better to the rest of the Indian Na-
tions, among whom they reside, by abusing their Women and
Evil-entreating their Men; and, by the way, this was the true
Reason of the fatal War which the Nations roundabout made
upon Carolina in the year 1713.

1729
Nov.

Then it was that all the Neighbouring Indians, grown weary of the Tyranny and Injustice with which they had been abus'd for many Years, resolv'd to endure their bondage no longer, but enter'd into General Confederacy against their Oppressors of Carolina.

The Indians open'd the War by knocking most of those little Tyrants on the Head that dwelt amongst them, under pretence of regulating their Commerce, and from thence Carry'd their Resentment so far as to endanger both NORTH and SOUTH CAROLINA.

16 We gave Orders that the Horses shou'd pass Roanoak River at Monisep Ford, while most of the Baggage was transported in a Canoe.

We landed at the Plantation of cornelius Keith, where I beheld the wretchedest Scene of Poverty I had ever met with in this happy Part of the World. The Man, his Wife and Six Small Children, liv'd in a Penn, like so many Cattle, without any Roof over their Heads but that of Heaven. And this was their airy Residence in the Day time, but then there was a Fodder Stack not far from this Inclosure, in which the whole Family shelter'd themselves a night's and in bad weather.

However, 'twas almost worth while to be as poor as this Man was, to be as perfectly contented. All his Wants proceeded from Indolence, and not from Misfortune. He had good Land, as well as good Health and good Limbs to work it, and, besides, had a Trade very useful to all the Inhabitants round about. He cou'd make and set up Quern Stones very well, and had proper Materials for that purpose just at Hand, if he cou'd have taken the pains to fetch them.

There is no other kind of Mills in those remote parts, and, therefore, if the Man wou'd have Workt at his Trade, he might have liv'd very comfortably. The poor woman had a little

more Industry, and Spun Cotton enough to make a thin covering for her own and her children's Nakedness.

1729
Nov.

I am sorry to say it, but Idleness is the general character of the Men in the Southern Parts of this Colony as well as in North Carolina. The Air is so mild, and the soil so fruitful, that very little Labour is requir'd to fill their Bellies, especially where the Woods afford such Plenty of Game. These advantages discharge the Men from the Necessity of killing themselves with Work, and then for the other Article of Raiment, a very little of that will suffice in so temperate a Climate. But so much as is absolutely Necessary falls to the good women's Share to provide. They all Spin, weave and knit, whereby they make a good Shift to cloath the whole Family; and to their credit be it recorded, many of them do it very completely, and thereby reproach their Husbands' Laziness in the most inoffensive way, that is to say, by discovering a better Spirit of Industry in themselves.

From thence we mov'd forward to Colo Mumford's other Plantation, under the Care of Miles Riley, where, by that Gentleman's Directions, we were again Supply'd with many good things. Here it was we discharg'd our Worthy Friend and Fellow Travellaur, Mr. Bearskin, who had so plentifully Supplied us with Provisions during our long Expedition. We rewarded Him to his Heart's content, so that he return'd to his Town loaden, both with Riches and the Reputation of haveing been a great Discoverer.

This being Sunday, we were Seasonably put in mind how much we were oblig'd to be thankfull for our happy return to the Inhabitants. Indeed, we had great reason to reflect with Gratitude on the Signal Mercies we had receiv'd. First, that we had, day by day, been fed by the Bountifull hand of Providence in the desolate Wilderness, Insomuch that if any of our

1729
Nov.

People wanted one Single Meal during the whole Expedition, it was intirely owing to their own imprudent Management.

Secondly, that not one Man of our whole Company, had any Violent Distemper or bad Accident Befall him, from One End of the Line to the other. The very worst that happen'd was, that One of them gave himself a Smart cut on the Pan of his knee with a Tomahawk, which we had the good Fortune to cure in a Short time, without the help of a Surgeon.

As for the Misadventures of Sticking in the Mire and falling into Rivers and Creeks, they were rather Subjects of Mirth than complaint, and serv'd only to diversify our Travels with a little farcicall Variety. And, lastly, that many uncommon Incidents have concurr'd to prosper our Undertaking. We had not only a dry Spring before we went out, but the preceding Winter, and even a Year or two before, had been much dryer than Ordinary. This made not only the Dismal, but likewise most of the Sunken Grounds near the Sea-Side, just hard enough to bear us, which otherwise had been quite unpassible.

And the whole time we were upon the Business, which was in all about Sixteen Weeks, we were never catch't in the Rain except once, Nor was our Progress Interrupted by bad Weather above 3 or 4 days at most. Besides all this, we were Surpriz'd by no Indian Enemy, but all of us brought our Scalps back Safe upon our Heads.

This cruel Method of Scalping of Enemies is practis'd by all the Savages in America, and perhaps is not the least proof of their Original from the Northern Inhabitants of Asia. Among the Ancient Scythians it was constantly us'd, who carry'd about these hairy Scalps as Trophies of Victory. They serv'd them too as Towels at home, and Trappings for their Horses abroad. But these were not content with the Skin of their Enemies' Heads, but also made use of their Skulls for cups to drink out of

upon high Festival days, & made greater Ostentation of them than if they had been made of Gold or the purest crystal.

1729
Nov.

Besides the Duties of the Day, we christen'd one of our Men who had been bred a Quaker. The Man desir'd this of his own mere Motion, without being tamper'd with by the Parson, who was willing every one shou'd go to Heaven his own way. But whether he did it by the Conviction of his Own Reason, or to get rid of some Troublesome Forms and Restraints, to which the Saints of that Perswasion are Subject, I can't Positively say.

We proceeded over a Levil Road 12 Miles, as far as George 18 Hixe's Plantation, on the South Side Meherrin River, Our Course being for the most part North-East. By the way we hired a Cart to transport our Baggage, that we might the better befriend our Jaded Horses.


Within 2 Miles of our Journey's End this day, we met the Express We had sent the Saturday before to give Notice of our Arrival. He had been almost as Expeditious as a carrier Pigeon, riding in 2 Days no less than 200 Miles.

All the Grandees of the Sappony Nation did us the Honour to repair hither to meet us, and our worthy Friend and Fellow Traveller, Bearskin, appear'd among the gravest of them in his Robes of ceremony. Four Young Ladies of the first Quality came with them, who had more the Air of cleanliness than any copper-Colour'd Beauties I had ever seen; Yet we resisted all their Charms, Notwithstanding the long Fast we had kept from the Sex, and the Bear Dyet we had been so long engag'd in. Nor can I say the Price they sat upon their Charms was at all Exorbitant. A Princess for a Pair of Red Stockings can't, surely, be thought buying Repentance much too dear.

The Men had something great and Venerable in their countenances, beyond the common Mien of Savages; and indeed they ever had the Reputation of being the Honestest, as well as the bravest Indians we have ever been acquainted with.

1729

Nov.

 This People is now made up of the Remnant of Several other Nations, of which the most considerable are the Sapponys, the Occaneeches, and Steukenhocks, who not finding themselves Separately Numerous enough for their Defence, have agreed to unite into one Body, and all of them now go under the Name of the Sapponys.

Each of these was formerly a distinct Nation, or rather a Several clan or Canton of the Same Nation, Speaking the Same Language, and using the same Customs. But their perpetual Wars against all other Indians, in time, reduc'd them so low as as to make it Necessary to join their Forces together.

They dwelt formerly not far below the Mountains, upon Yadkin River, about 200 Miles West and by South from the Falls of Roanoak. But about 25 Years ago they took Refuge in Virginia, being no longer in condition to make Head not only against the Northern Indians, who are their Implacable enemies, but also against most of those to the South. All the Nations round about, bearing in mind the Havock these Indians us'd formerly to make among their Ancestors in the Insolence of their Power, did at length avenge it Home upon them, and made them glad to apply to this Government for protection.

Colo Spotfwood, our then lieut. governor, having a good Opinion of their Fidelity & Courage, Settled them at Christanna, ten Miles north of Roanoak, upon the belief that they wou'd be a good Barrier on that Side of the Country, against the Incurfion of all Foreign Indians. And in Earnest they wou'd have Serv'd well enough for that Purpose, if the White People in the Neighbourhood had not debauch't their Morals, and ruin'd their Health with Rum, which was the Cause of many disorders, and ended at last in a barbarous Murder committed by one of these Indians when he was drunk, for which the poor Wretch was executed when he was sober.

It was matter of great Concern to them, however, that one of

their Grandees should be put to so ignominious a Death. All Indians have as great an Aversion to hanging as the Muscovites, tho' perhaps not for the same cleanly reason: These last believing that the Soul of one that dies in this manner, being forc'd to Sally out of the Body at the Postern, must needs be defiled. The Sapponys took this Execution so much to Heart, that they soon after quitted their Settlement and remov'd in a Body to the Cataubas.

1729
Nov.

The Daughter of the TETERO KING went away with the Sapponys, but being the last of her Nation, and fearing she Shou'd not be treated according to her Rank, poison'd herself, like an Old Roman, with the Root of the Trumpet-Plant. Her Father dy'd 2 Years before, who was the most intrepid Indian we have been acquainted with. He had made himself terrible to all other Indians by His Exploits, and had escaped so many Dangers that he was esteem'd invulnerable. But at last he dy'd of a Pleurisy, the last Man of his Race and Nation, leaving only that unhappy Daughter behind him, who would not long survive Him.

The most uncommon Circumstance in this Indian visit Was, that they all came on Horse-back, which was certainly intended for a Piece of State, because the Distance was but 3 Miles, and 'tis likely they had walk't a foot twice as far to catch their Horses. The Men rode more awkwardly than any Dutch Sailor, and the Ladies bestrode their Palfreys a la mode de France, but were so bashful about it, that there was no persuading them to Mount till they were quite out of our Sight.

The French Women use to ride a-straddle, not so much to make them sit firmer in the Saddle, as from the hopes the same thing might peradventure befall them that once happen'd to the Nun of ORLEANS, who escaping out of a Nunnery, took Post en CAVALIER, and in ten Miles' hard riding had the good Fortune to have all the Tokens of a Man break out upon her.

1729

Nov.

This Piece of History ought to be the more credible, because it leans upon much the same Degree of Proof as the Tale of Bishop Burnet's Two Italian NUNS, who, according to his Lordship's Account, underwent the Same happy Metamorphosis, probably by some other Violent Exercise.

- 19 From hence we despatch't the Cart with our Baggage under a Guard, and cross'd MEHERRIN River, which was not 30 Yards wide in that Place. By the help of Fresh Horses that had been sent us, we now began to mend our Pace, which was also quicken'd by the Strong Inclinations we had to get Home.

In the Distance of 5 Miles we forded MEHERRIN creek, which was very near as broad as the River. About 8 Miles farther we came to STURGEON-Creek, so call'd from the Dexterity an OCCAANECHY Indian shewed there in Catching one of those Royal Fish, which was perform'd after the following Manner.

In the Summer time 'tis no unusual thing for Sturgeons to Sleep on the Surface of the Water, and one of them having wander'd up into this Creek in the Spring, was floating in that drowfy condition.

The Indian, above mention'd, ran up to the Neck into the Creek a little below the Place where he discover'd the Fish, expecting the Stream wou'd soon bring his Game down to Him. He judg'd the Matter right, and as Soon as it came within his Reach, he whip't a running Noose over his Jole. This waked the Sturgeon, which being Strong in its own Element darted immediately under Water and dragg'd the Indian after Him. The Man made it a Point of Honour to keep his Hold, which he did to the Apparent Danger of being drown'd. Sometimes both the Indian and the Fish disappear'd for a Quarter of a Minute, & then rose at some Distance from where they dived. At this rate they continued flouncing about, Sometimes above and sometimes

under Water, for a considerable time, till at last the Hero Suffocated his Adversary, and haled his Body ashoar in Triumph. 1729
Nov.

About Six Miles beyond that, we passed over Wicco-quoi creek, Named so from the Multitude of Rocks over which the Water tumbles in a Fresh, with a bellowing Noise. Not far from where we went over, is a Rock much higher than the rest, that Strikes the Eye with agreeable Horror, and near it a very Talkative Eccho, that, like a fluent Help-mect, will return her good Man Seven Words for one, & after all, be Sure to have the Last. It speaks not only the Language of Men, but also of Birds & Beasts, and often a Single Wild Goose is cheated into the Belief that Some of his Company are not far off, by hearing his own cry multiply'd; & 'tis pleasant to see in what a flutter the Poor Bird is, when he finds himself disappointed.

On the Banks of this creek are very broad low-Grounds in many Places, and abundance of good high-Land, tho' a little Subject to Floods.

We had but two Miles more to Capt. EMBRY'S, where we found the Housekeeping much better than the House. Our Bountifull Landlady had set her Oven and all her Spits, Pots, Gridirons and Saucepans to work, to diversify our Entertainment, tho' after all it prov'd but a Mahomettan Feast, there being Nothing to drink but Water. The worst of it was, we had unluckily outrid the Baggage, and for that Reason were oblig'd to Lodge very Sociably in the Same Apartment with the Family, where, reckoning Women and Children, we muster'd in all no less than Nine Persons, who all pigg'd lovingly together.

In the Morning colo Bolling, who had been Surveying in the 20 Neighbourhood, and Mr. Walker, who dwelt not far off, came to visit us; And the last of these Worthy Gentlemen, fearing that our drinking so much Water might incline us to Pleurisy, brought us a kind Supply both of Wine and cyder.

1729

Nov.

It was Noon before we cou'd disengage Ourselves from the Courtesies of this Place, and then the two Gentlemen above-mention'd were so good as to accompany us that day's Journey, tho' they cou'd by no means approve of our LITHUANIAN Fashion or Dismounting now and then, in order to walk part of the way on foot.

We crost Nottoway River not far from our Landlord's House, where it seem'd to be about 25 Yards over. This River divides the County of Prince George from that of BRUNSWICK. We had not gone 8 Miles farther before our Eyes were bless'd with the Sight of Sapponi chappel, which was the first House of Prayer we had seen for more than two calendar Months.

About 3 Miles beyond that, we pass'd over Stony Creek, where One of those that Guarded the Baggage kill'd a Polcat, upon which he made a Comfortable Repast. Those of his company were so SQUEAMISH they cou'd not be persuad'd at first to tast, as they said, of so unfavoury an Animal; but seeing the Man Smack his Lips with more pleasure than usual, they ventur'd at last to be of his Mess, and instead of finding the Flesh rank and high-tasted, they own'd it to be the Sweetest Morsel they had ever eat in their Lives.

The ill Savour of this little Beast lys altogether in its Urine, which Nature has made so detestably ill-scented on purpose to furnish a helpless Creature with Something to defend itself. For as some Brutes have Horns and Hoofs, and others are arm'd with Claws, Teeth and Tusshes for their Defence; and as Some Spit a Sort of Poison at their Adversaries, like the Paco; and others dart Quills at their Pursuers, like the Porcupine; and as some have no Weapons to help themselves but their Tongue, and others none but their Tails; so the poor Polcat's safety lies altogether in the irresistible Stench of its Water; insomuch that when it finds itself in Danger from an Enemy, it Moistens its bushy Tail plentifully with this Liquid Ammunition, and, then

with great fury, Sprinkles it like a Shower of Rain full into the Eyes of its Assailant, by which it gains time to make its Escape. 1729
Nov.

Nor is the Polcat the only Animal that defends itself by a Stink. At the CAPE OF GOOD HOPE is a little Beast, call'd a Stinker, as big as a Fox, and Shap't like a Ferret, which being pursued has no way to save himself but by farting and Squittering. And then such a Stench ensues that None of its Pursuers can Possibly stand it.

At the End of 30 good Miles, we arriv'd in the Evening at colo Bolling's, where first, from a Primitive Course of Life, we began to relapse into Luxury. This Gentleman lives within Hearing of the Falls of Appamatuck River, which are very Noisy whenever a Flood happens to roll a greater stream than ordinary over the Rocks.

The River is Navigable for Small Craft as high as the Falls, and at Some distance from thence fetches a compass, and runs nearly parallel with James River almost as high as the Mountains.

While the commissioners fared Sumptuously here, the poor Chaplain and two Surveyors, stoppt Ten Miles Short at a poor Planter's House, in Pity to their Horses, made a Saint ANTHONY's Meal, that is, they Supp't upon the Pickings of what Stuck in their Teeth ever since Breakfast. But to make them amends, the good Man laid them in his own Bed, where they all three nestled together in one cotton Sheet and one of Brown Oznaburgs, made Still Something Browner by two Months' Copious Perspiration.

But those worthy Gentlemen were so alert in the Morning 21 after their light Supper, that they came up with us before Breakfast, & honestly paid their Stomachs all they ow'd them.

We made no more than a Sabbath day's Journey from this to the next Hospitable House, namely, that of our great Benefactor, Colo Mumford. We had already been much befriended by this

1729
Nov.

Gentleman, who, besides sending Orders to his Overseers at ROANOAK to let us want for nothing, had, in the Beginning of our Business, been so kind as to recommend most of the Men to us who were the faithfull Partners of our Fatigue.

Altho' in most other ATCHIEVEMENTS those who command are apt to take all the HONOUR to themselves of what perhaps was more owing to the Vigour of those who were under them, Yet I must be more just, and allow these brave Fellows their full Share of credit for the Service we perform'd, & must declare, that it was in a great Measure owing to their Spirit and indefatigable Industry that we overcame many Obstacles in the Course of our Line, which till then had been esteem'd unmountable.

Nor must I at the Same time omit to do Justice to the Surveyors, and particularly to Mr. Mayo, who, besides an eminent degree of Skill, encounter'd the same Hardships and underwent the Same Fatigue that the forwardest of the Men did, and that with as much Chearfulness as if Pain had been his Pleasure, and Difficulty his real Diversion.

Here we discharg'd the few Men we had left, who were all as Ragged as the GIBEONITE AMBASSADORS, tho', at the Same time, their Rags were very honourable, by the Service they had so Vigorously performed in making them so.

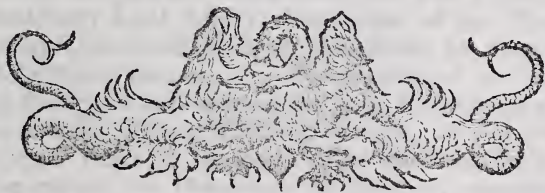
- 22 A little before Noon we all took leave and dispers't to our Several Habitations, where we were so happy as to find all our Familys well. This crown'd all our other Blessings, and made our Journey as prosperous as it had been painfull.

Thus ended our Second Expedition, in which we extended the Line within the Shadow of the Chariky Mountains, where we were oblig'd to Set up our Pillars, like Hercules, and return Home.

We had now, upon the whole, been out Sixteen Weeks, including going and returning, and had travell'd at least Six

Hundred Miles, and no Small part of that Distance on foot. ¹⁷²⁹ Below, towards the Sea Side, our Course lay through MARSHES, ^{Nov.} SWAMPS, and great Waters; and above, over Steep HILLS, Craggy Rocks, and Thickets, hardly penetrable. Notwithstanding this variety of Hardships, we may say, without Vanity, that we faithfully obey'd the King's Orders, and perform'd the Business effectually, in which we had the Honour to be employ'd.

Nor can we by any Means reproach Ourselves of having put the Crown to any exorbitant Expence in this difficult affair, the whole Charge, from Beginning to End, amounting to no more than One Thousand Pounds. But let no one concern'd in this painful Expedition complain of the Scantiness of his Pay, so long as His Majesty has been Graciously pleas'd to add to our Reward the HONOUR of his ROYAL approbation, and to declare, notwithstanding the Desertion of the CAROLINA COMMISSIONERS, that the Line by us run shall hereafter Stand as the true Boundary betwixt the GOVERNMENTS OF VIRGINIA AND NORTH CAROLINA.





APPENDIX

To the Foregoing Journal, containing the second Charter to the Proprietors of CAROLINA, confirming and enlarging the first, and also several other acts to which it refers. These are plac'd by themselves at the End of the Book, that they may not interrupt the Thread of the Story, and the Reader will be more at liberty whether he will please to read them or not, being something dry and unpleasant.

The Second CHARTER granted by KING CHARLES 2d to the Proprietors of CAROLINA.

CHARLES, by the GRACE of GOD, &c.: WHEREAS, by our LETTERS PATENT, bearing date the four and twentieth day of march, in the fifteenth year of our Reign, we were graciously pleas'd to grant unto our right trusty and right well beloved coufin and counsellor, Edward, Earl of Clarendon, our high Chancellor of England, Our right trusty and right intirely beloved Coufin and Counsellor, George, Duke of Albemarle, Master of our Horse, our right trusty and well beloved William, now Earl of Craven, our Right trusty and well beloved Counsellor, Anthony, Lord Ashley, Chancellor of our Exchequer, our right trusty and well beloved Counsellor, Sir George Carterett, Knight and Baronet, vice Chamberlain of our household, our right trusty and well beloved, Sir John Colleton, Knight and Baronet, and Sir William Berkley, Knight, all that Province, Territory, or Tract of Ground, called Carolina, situate, lying and being within our Dominions of America, extending from the North End of the Island called Luke Island, which lys in the Southern Virginia Seas, and within Six and thirty Degrees of the Northern Latitude; and to the West as far as the South Seas; & so respectively as far as the River of Mathias, which

bordereth upon the Coast of Florida, & within one and thirty Degrees of the Northern Latitude, and so west in a direct Line as far as the South Seas aforesaid. Now know ye, that, at the humblest request of the said Grantees in the aforesaid Letters Patent named, and as a further mark of our especial favour towards them, we are graciously pleas'd to enlarge our said Grant unto them according to the Bounds & limits hereafter Specify'd & in favour to the pious and noble purpose of the said Edward, Earl of Clarendon, George, Duke of Albemarle, William, Earl of Craven, John, Lord Berkley, Anthony, Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkley, we do give and grant to them, their Heirs and Assigns, all that Province, Territory, or tract of Ground, Situate, lying and being within our Dominions of America aforesaid, extending North and Eastward as far as the North end of Carahutke River or Inlet, upon a Streight westerly line to Wyonoake Creek, which lys within or about the Degrees of thirty-six and thirty Minutes Northern Latitude, and so West in a Direct line as far as the South Seas; & south and westward as far as the Degrees of twenty-nine inclusive Northern Latitude, & so west in a direct line as far as the South seas; together with all and Singular ports, harbours, Bays, rivers & inlets belonging unto the Province or Territory aforesaid. And also, all the Soil, lands, fields, Woods, Mountains, farms, Lakes, Rivers, Bays and Inlets, situate, or being within the Bounds or limits last before mention'd: with the fishing of all Sorts of fish, Whales, Sturgeons, and all other Royal fishes in the Sea, Bays, Inlets, and Rivers, within the Premises, and the fish therein taken; together with the royalty of the Sea, upon the Coast within the limits aforesaid. And Moreover, all Veins, Mines and Quarries, as well discover'd as not discover'd, of Gold, Silver, Gems & precious Stones, and all other whatsoever; be it of Stones, Metals or any other thing found or to be found within the Province, Territory, Inlets and limits aforesaid. And furthermore. the Patronage & Avowsons of all the Churches & Chappels, which as the Christian Religion shall encrease within the Province Territory Isles and limits aforesaid, Shall happen hereafter to be erected; together with Licence and. Power to build & found Churches & Chappels & Oratories in fit and convenient places, within the said Bound's and Limits; and to Cause them to be dedicated and Consecrated, according to the Ecclesiastical Laws of our Kingdom of England; together with all and

Singular the like, and as ample Rights, Jurisdictions. Priviledges ; Prerogatives, Royalties, Liberties, Immunities and Franchises of what kind Soever, within the Territory. Isle's Inlets & Limits aforesaid. To have. hold, use. exercise & enjoy the Same as amply, fully and in as ample. a Manner. as any Bishop of Durham in our Kingdom of England, ever heretofore had. held. used. or enjoy'd, or. of right, ought, or could have, use. or enjoy ; and then the Said Edward Earl of Clarendon : George. Duke of. Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord. Berkley, Anthony Lord. Ashley, Sir. George Carterett, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkley. their. Heirs and Assigns ; We do by these Presents ; for us. our Heirs and. Successor's, make. create. and constitute the true and absolute. Lords and Proprietors of the Said Province, or Territory, and of all other, the Premises, savinge alway's the Faith, Allegiance and Sovereign. Dominion, due to us, our Heirs, and Successors. for the same ; to have, hold ; possess and enjoy. the said Province, Territory, Inlets and all. and singular, other the Premises ; to them the said Edward. Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley. Anthony Lord Ashley Sir. George. Carteret. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley. their Heirs and Assigns for ever. to be holden of Us. Our Heirs & Successor's as of. Our Manner of East. Greenwich in Kent in free & common Socage & not in Capite or by Knights. Service yeelding and paying yearly to us. Our. Heirs. & Successors for the Same. the fourth part of all. Gold. & Silver. Oar which within the Limits hereby granted shall. from time to time happen to be found over and besides the yearly. Rent of twenty Marks and the fourth part of the. Gold & Silver. Oar. in and by the said recited Letters. Patents reserv'd and Payable.

And that the Province or Territory hereby granted and described may be dignify'd with as large Titles and. Priviledges as any other Parts of our Dominions and Territories. in that Region. Know. ye that we of our further Grace certain knowledge & mere Motion have thought fit to annex the same Tract of Ground and Territory unto the same Province of Carolina and out. of the fulness of our. Royal Power & Prerogative. We do. for Us. Our. Heirs And Successor's annex & unite the Same to the said Province of Carolina And for as much as we have made and ordain'd the aforesaid Edward Earl of Clarendon George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven.

John Lord Berkley. Anthony Lord Ashley. Sir George Carteret. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley their Heirs and Assigns the true Lord's and Proprietors of all the Province or Territory aforesaid Know. ye therefore moreover the we. reposing especial trust & confidence in. their fidelity Wisdom. Justice and Provident. Circumspection for Us Our Heirs and Successor's do grant full and absolute Power by Vertue of these Presents to them the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle. William Earl of Craven. John Lord Berkley Anthony Lord Ashly Sir George. Carteret. Sir John. Colleton and Sir William Berkley and their Heir's & Assigns for the good & happy Government of the said whole Province or Territory full Power and Authority to erect. constitute & make several Counties. Baronies. & Colonies of & within the said Provinces. Territories. Land's and Hereditaments in and by said recited Letters Patents. & these Presents granted or. mention'd to be granted as aforesaid with several and distinct Jurisdictions Power's. Liberties and Priviledges. And also to Ordain. make and enact and under their Seals. to Publish any Law's and Constitutions whatsoever. either appertaining to the Publick State of the said whole Province or Territory. or of any distinct or. Particular County, Barony. and. Colony of or within the Same. or to the Private utility of Particular Persons. according to their best discretion, by & with the advice. Assent & Approbation of the Freemen of the Said Province or Territory or of the Freemen of County. Barony or Colony. for which such Law or Constitution shall be made or the greater Part of them or of their Delegates or Deputies. whom for the enacting of the said Law's when as often as need shall require We will that the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George. Duke of Albemarle William Earl of Craven John Lord. Berkley Anthony Lord Ashley Sir George Carterett, Sir John. Colleton & Sir William Berkley. their Heirs or Assigns. Shall from time to time, assemble in Such Manner and form as to them shall seem best, and the same Law's duly to Execute upon all People within the said Provinces or. Territory. County Colony. or. Barony the Limits thereof for the time being. which shall be Constituted under the Power & Government of them. or any of them. either Sailing towards the said Province or Territory of Carolina, or returning from thence towards. England, or any other of Our, or foreign Dominions, by Imposition of Penalties, Imprisonment, or any other Punishment: Yea. if it shall. be needfull, and the Quality

of the offence require it. by taking away Member & Life, either by them the Said Edward. Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle. William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley. Anthony Lord Ashley Sir George Carterett. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley. and their Heirs or by them or their Deputies Lieutenants. Judges. Justices. Magistrates. or. Officers whatsoever as within the Said Province as at Sea, in such. Manner & form as unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle. William Earl of Craven, John. Lord Berkley. Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley. and their Heirs. shall seem most. convenient, Also, to remit. release, pardon and abolish, whether before Judgement. or after, all Crimes and offences whatsoever. Against the said Law's; and to do all and every other thing and things, which unto the Compleat establishment of Justice, unto Courts, Sessions & forms of Judicature and Manners of proceedings therein. do belong altho in these Presents, express mention is not. made thereof. & by Judges to him or them delegated to award process. hold pleas. & determine in all the said Courts, & places of Judicature. all Actions, Suits, and — Causes whatsoever, as well Criminal as. Civil, real, mix't personal. or of any other kind or. Nature whatsoever, which Law's So as aforesaid to, be publish'd, Our Pleasure is & we do enjoin, require and. Command, shall. be absolutely firm & available in Law; and that all the leige People of Us. our Heirs and Successors, within the said Province or Territory, do observe & keep the same inviolably in those Parts. So far as they concern them, under the Pains & Penalties therein express'd or to be express'd provided nevertheless, that the said Law's be consonant to Reason, and as near as may be conveniently, agreeable to the Law's & Customs of this our Realm of England.

And. because such Assemblies of freeholder's cannot be so suddenly call'd as there may be Occasion to require the Same. we do therefore by these Presents, give & Grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon George. Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George. Carterett. Sir John Colleton. and Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, by themselves or their Magistrates. in that Behalf, lawfully Authorized, full Power and Authority from time to time, to make & ordain fit and wholesome Orders & Ordinances, within the Province or. Territory aforesaid or any County, Barony or. Province of or within the same,

to be kep't and observ'd, as well for the keeping of the Peace, as for the better Government of the People there abiding. & to publish the same to all to whom it may concern. which ordinances we do, by these Presents. streightly charge and command to be inviolably observ'd within the same Province. Counties, Territory's, Barony's & Provinces under the Penalties therein exprest'd: So as Such Ordinances be reasonable & not repugnant or contrary, but as near as may be agreeable to the Laws & Statutes of this our Kingdom, of England; and so as the same Ordinances do not extend to the binding, charging or taking away of the right or Interest of any Person or. Persons in their freehold, Goods or. Chattels whatsoever,

And to the end the said Province or Territory, may be more happily encreas'd by the Multitude of People resorting thither & may likewise be the more Strongly defended from the Incurfions of Savages and other Enemies, Pirates & Robbers, Therefore, We for Us, Our Heirs and Successor's, do give and grant. by these Presents, Power. Licence and Liberty unto all the Leige People of Us, Our Heirs and Successor's in our Kingdom of England & elsewhere, Within any other our Dominions, Islands, Colonies or. Plantations, (excepting those who shall be especially forbidden) to transport themselves & Families into the said Province or Territory, with Convenient. Shipping & fitting Provisions & there to Settle themselves, dwell and Inhabit, any Law, Act. Statute, Ordinance. or other thing to the contrary. in any wise notwithstanding.

And we will also, and of our especial Grace, for us, Our Heirs, & Successor's, do Streightly enjoin, ordain constitute and command, that the Said Province or Territory, shall be of our Allegiance; & that all And Singular, the Subjects and. Leige People of Us. Our. Heirs & Successor's, transported or to be transported, into the said Province, & the Children of them. and such as shall descend from them, there born, or hereafter to be born, be, and shall be, Denizens & Leige People. of Us. our Heirs, and, Successor's. of this our Kingdom of England, & be in all things, held, treated, and reputed as the Leige faithfull People. of Us, our Heirs and Successors. born within this our Said Kingdom, or any other of our Dominions, and may inherit, or otherwise purchase & receive, take, hold, buy, & possess. any Land's, Land's, Tenements, or Hereditaments, within the Said Places, & them may occupy, & enjoy, sell, alien, and bequeath, as likewise all Liberties, Franchises & Priviledges of this our Kingdom, and of

other our Dominions aforesaid, may freely and quietly have, Possess, and enjoy as our Leige People born within the Same, without the Molestation, vexation. grievance or. Trouble. of Us. our Heirs and Successors, any Act. Statute, Ordinance or Provision to the contrary notwithstanding.

And furthermore, that our Subjects of this our said Kingdom of England, & other our Dominions, may be the rather encouraged to undertake this Expedition, with ready & cheerfull Means. Know, Ye, that We, of our especial Grace, certain Knowledge, & mere Motion, do give & Grant by Vertue of the Presents. as well to the said. Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley and their Heirs, as unto all others as shall, from time to time, repair unto the said Province or, Territory. with a purpose to inhabit, there or to trade with the Natives thereof, Full Liberty and Licence to trade & Freight in every Part whatsoever of Us, our. Heirs & Successor's, and into the said Province of Carolina, by them, their Servants & Assigns, to transport all & Singular, their good's, Wares, and Merchandizes, as likewise all Sort of Grain whatsoever, & any other thing whatsoever, necessary for their food & cloathing, not prohibited by the Law's and Statutes of our Kingdom & Dominions, to be carried out of the same, without any let or Molestation of Us our Heirs, & Successors, or of any other our Officers or Ministers whatsoever, Saving also to Us, our Heirs, and Successor's, the Customs & other Duties & Payments due for the said Wares & Merchandizes, according to the several Rates of the Places from whence the same shall be transported.

We will also & by these Presents for. Us. our Heirs Successors, do give and grant Licence by this our Charter, unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle William Earl of Craven. John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord. Ashley, Sir George Carteret Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, and to all the Inhabitants & Dwellers in the Province or Territory aforesaid, both Present and to come, full Power & absolute Authority to import or unlade, by themselves or their Servants. Factors or Assigns all Merchandizes & Goods whatsoever, that shall arrise of the Fruits & Commodities of the said Province, or Territory, either by Land or Sea, into any of the Parts of us, our Heirs & Suc-

cessor's, in our Kingdom of England, Scotland, or Ireland, or otherwise, to dispose of the said goods, in the said Parts. and if need be, within one year next after the unlading, to lade the said Merchandizes & Good's again into the same, or other Ships & to export the same into any other Country's, either of our Dominions or. forreign, being in Amity with Us, our Heirs & Successors, so as the rest of the Customes, Subsidies & other Duties for the same to Us, our Heirs & Successors, as the rest of Our Subjects, of this our Kingdom for the time being, shall be bound to pay, Beyond which we will not that the Inhabitants of the said Province or Territory, shall be any way Charged, Provided, Nevertheless, and Our Will & Pleasure is, and We have further, for the Considerations aforesaid, of our especial Grace, certain Knowledge & Mere. Motion, given & Granted, & by these Presents, for Us. our Heirs and Successor's, do give & grant. unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord. Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, full & free Licence, Liberty, Power, & Authority. at any time or times from & after the feast. of St. Micheal the Arch. Angel, which shall be in the Year of our Lord Christ, one Thousand Six Hundred, sixty & Seven.; as well to import and bring into any our Dominions from the said Province of Carolina, or any part thereof, the several goods & Commodities herein after mention'd; that is to say, Silks; Wines, Currants, Raysons, Capers, Wax, Almonds, Oyl and Olives without paying or answering to us our Heirs & Successors, any Custom, Impost or other Duty. for, or in respect thereof, for and during the time and space of seven Years, to Commence & be accompted from, and after the first importation of four Tons of any the said Goods in any one Bottom Ship or Vessel, from the said Province or Territory, into any of our Dominions, as also to export and carry out of any of our Dominions into the said Province or Territory, Custom free, all Sorts of Tools, which be useful or necessary for the Planters there, in the Accommodation & Improvement of the Premises, anything before in these Presents, contain'd, or any Law, Act, Statute, Prohibition, or any other Matter or Thing, heretofore had, made, enacted or provided in any, wise notwithstanding.

And. furthermore of our mere ample & especial Grace, certain Knowledge and mere motion, We do for Us, our Heirs, and Suc-

cessors, grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, full & absolute Power and Authority to make erect and Constitute within the Said Province or Territory, & the Isles & Inlets aforesaid, Such & so Many Sea Parts, Harbours, Creeks and other Places, for discharge and unladeing of Goods & Merchandizes out of Ships, Boats and other Vessels, and for lading of them in such and so many places & with such Jurisdictions, Priviledges & Franchises, unto the Said Ports belonging, as to them shall seem most expedient; & that all and Singular, the Ships, Boats, & other Vessels, which shall come for Merchandizes and Trade into the said Province or Territory, or shall depart out of the same, shall be laden and unladen at Such Ports only. as shall be erected & constituted by the said Edward. Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony, Lord Ashley, Sir George. Carteret. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns & not elsewhere, any use, Custom, or anything to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding,

And we do furthermore will Appoint & Ordain, & by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, do grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley their Heirs & Assigns, that they the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, may from time to time forever, have and enjoy the Customs and Subsidies in the Ports, Harbours, Creeks & other places within the Province aforesaid, payable for the Goods, Merchandizes, & Wares there Laded, or to be Laded or unladed, the said Customs to be reasonably Assess'd to upon any Occasion by themselves & by & with the consent of the free people, or the greater part of them, as aforesaid; to whom we give Power by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs & Successors, upon just cause & in due proportion to assess & impose the same.

And further, of our especial Grace certain Knowledge & mere Motion, we have given, granted & confirm'd & by these Presents for Us, our Heirs & Successors, do give, Grant & con-

firm unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven John Lord. Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George. Carteret, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs and Assigns, full & absolute Licence, Power & Authority, that they the said Edward. Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George. Carteret, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, from time to time, hereafter for ever, at his and their Will & pleasure, may Assign, alien, grant demise or enfeoff. the Premises or any part or Parcell thereof to him or them, that shall be willing to purchase the same; and to Such person or persons as they shall think fit, to have and to hold to them the said Person or Persons, their Heirs & Assigns in Fee Simple or in fee Sayle or for the Term of Life or Lives, or Years to be held of them the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, by such rents, & Services, and Customs as shall seem fit to them the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord, Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns & not of Us, our Heirs & Successor's; and to the same Person and Persons, & to all & every one of them, We do give & grant, by these presents, for Us our Heirs and Successors, Licence, Authority, & Power that such Person or Persons may have and take the Premises, or any Parcell thereof, of the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs and Assigns, & the same to hold to themselves their Heirs or Assigns, in what Estate of Inheritance soever, in Fee Simple, or in Fee Sayle or otherwise, as to them the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George, Carteret. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, shall seem expedient. The Statute in the Parliament of Edward, Son of King Henry, heretofore King of England. our Predecessor, commonly call'd the Statute of Quia Emtores Terrar; or any other Statute, Act, Ordinance, Use,

Law, Custom, or any other Matter, Cause or thing heretofore published or provided to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding

And because many persons born & Inhabiting in the said Province, for their Deserts & Services may expect, & be capable. of Marks of Honour & Favour, which in respect of the great Distance cannot conveniently be conferred by us, our Will & Pleasure therefore is & We do by these Presents, give and grant unto the said, Edward, Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George. Carterett, Sir John Colleton. & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, full Power & Authority to give & Confer unto & upon such of the Inhabitants of the said Province or Territory, as they shall think, do or shall merit the same such Marks of Favour, & Titles of Honour, as they shall think fit, so as their Titles or Honours be not the same as are enjoy'd by, or conferr'd upon any of the Subjects of this our Kingdom of England.

And further also, we do by these presents, for us, our Heirs & Successors, give and grant, Licence to them the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, full Power & Authority, Liberty and Licence to erect. raise & Build within the said Province or Places aforesaid or any Part or Parts thereof, such & so many Forts, Fortresses, Castles, Cities, Burroughs, Towns, Villages, or any other Fortifications whatsoever; & the same or any of them to fortify & furnish with Ordnance Powder, Shott, Armour, & all other Weapons, Ammunition & Habiliments of War, both defensive & Offensive, as shall be thought fit and convenient for the safety & Welfare of the said Province, & Places, or any part. thereof, and the same, or any of them, from time to time, as occasion shall require, to Dismantle, Disfurnish, Demolish & pull down; And also to Place. Constitute & Appoint in, or over all, or any of the said Castles, forts, fortifications, Cities Towns, & Places aforesaid, Governors, Deputy Governors, Magistrates, Sheriffs, & other Officers, Civil and Military as to them shall seem meet: and to the said Cities, Burroughs, Towns, Villages, or any other place or places within the said Province or Territory, to grant Letters, or Charters of Incorporations with all Liberties. Franchises & Pri-

vileges requisite, or usual, or to, or within this our Kingdom of England granted, or belonging: And in the same Cities, Burroughs, Towns & other Places. to constitute, erect & Appoint, Such & So many Markets, Marts, & Fairs, as shall in that behalf be thought fit and necessary; and further also, to Erect & make in the Province or Territory aforesaid; or any part thereof, So many Mannors with such Signories as to them shall Seem Meet, & Convenient, & in every of the said Mannors to have & to hold a Court-Baron with all things whatsoever, which to a Court-Baron do belong, & to have & to hold views of franck pledge, & Courts-Leet, for the conservation of the Peace, and better Government of those Parts, with such Limits, Jurisdiction & Precincts, as by the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, or their Heirs, shall be appointed for that purpose, with all things whatsoever, which to a Court-leet or view of Franck Pledge; do belong, the same Courts to be holden by Stewards, to be deputed, & authorized by the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord. Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, or their Heirs, by the Lords of the Mannors & leets, for the time being, when the same shall be Erected,

And because that in so remote a Country & scituate amongst so many barbarous Nations. the Invasions as well of Salvages, as other Enemies. Pirates & Robbers may probably be fear'd; Therefore we have given & for Us, our Heirs & Successors do give power by these presents, unto the Said Edward. Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord. Ashley, Sir George. Carterett, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs or Assigns, by themselves, or their Captains, or other Officers to Levy, Muster, & Train up all Sorts of Men, of what Condition soever, or wheresoever born, whether in the said Province, or elsewhere, for the time being, And to make War & pursue the Enemies aforesaid, as well by Sea, as by Land; Yea even without the Limits of the said Province, and by God's Assistance, to Vanquish, and take them & being taken, to put them to Death by the Law of War, & to save them at their pleasure; and to do all & every other thing which to the Charge & Office

of a Captain General of an Army do belong, or hath accustom'd to belong, as fully & freely as any Captain General of an Army hath had the same.

Also our Will & pleasure is, & by this our Charter, We do give & grant unto the said. Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton, & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs and Assigns, full power & Liberty & Authority in case of Rebellion; Tumult, or Sedition (if any should happen which God forbid) either upon the Land within the Province aforesaid, or upon the main Sea, in making a Voyage thither, or returning from thence, by him & themselves, their Captains, Deputies, or Officers. to be Authorized under his or their Seals for that purpose, To whom also for Us, our Heirs & Successors, we do give & grant by these presents, full power & Authority to exercise Martial Law, against Mutinous & Seditious persons of those parts, Such as shall refuse to submit themselves to their Government, or shall refuse to serve in the Wars, or shall fly to the Enemy, or forsake their Colours or Ensigns or be Loyerers or Stragglers, or otherwise howsoever offending against law, Custom, or Military Discipline, as freely & in as ample Manner & form as any Captain General of an Army, by Vertue of his Office, might, or hath accustom'd to use the same.

And our further pleasure is & by these presents, for Us, our Heirs & Successors, We do grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon. George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley: Sir George Carteret. Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, & to the Tenants & Inhabitants of the Said Province, or Territory, both present & to come & to every of them, that the Said Province or Territory, & the Tenants, & Inhabitants thereof, shall not from henceforth, be held or reputed any member or part of any Colony Whatsoever, in America or elsewhere; Now transported or made; nor shall be depending on or Subject to their Government in any thing. but be absolutely seperated & divided from the same. And our pleasure is, by these presents, that they be Seperated, and that they be Subject immediately to our Crown of England, as depending thereof for ever, And that the Inhabitants of the said Province or Territory, nor any of them, shall at any time hereafter be, Compell'd or compellable, or be any way's Subject, or liable to

appear or answer to any Matter, suit, cause, or Plaint whatsoever, out of the Province or Territory aforesaid, in any other of our Islands Collony's or Dominions, in America. or elsewhere other than in our Realm of England and Dominion of Wales. And because it may happen, that some of the People and Inhabitants of the said Province, cannot in their private opinions conform to the publick exercise of Religion according to the Liturgy, Forms & Ceremonies of the Church of England, or Subscribe the Oaths & Articles, made & established in that behalf, and for that the same, by reason of the remote distances of those Places will as we hope, be no Breach of the unity and conformity, established in this nation. Our Will & Pleasure therefore is, & we do by these presents for us, our Heirs & Successors, give & grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George. Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George, Carterett, Sir John. Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, full & free Licence, Liberty, & Authority, by such ways & Means as they shall think fit, to give and grant unto such Person and Persons, Inhabiting, & being within the said Province or Territory, hereby or by the said recited Letters Patents, mention'd to be granted as aforesaid, or any Part thereof, such Indulgencies & Dispensations in that behalf, for & during such time & times, & with such Limitations and Restrictions as they the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord, Ashley, Sir George Carterett Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, shall in their discretion think fit & reasonable, And that no Person or Persons, unto whom such Liberty shall be given, shall be any way molested, punished, disquieted, or called in question for any differences in Opinion or Practice, in Matters of Religious Concernment, who do not actually disturb the civil Peace of the Province, County or Colony, that they shall make their abode in. But all & every such Person & Persons, may from time to time, & at all times, freely & Quietly have & enjoy his & their Judgments, & Consciences in Matters of Religion throughout all the said Province, or Colony, they behaving themselves peaceably, & not using this Liberty to Licentiousness, nor to the Civil Injury, or outward disturbance of others, any Law, Statute, or Clause contain'd, or to be con-

tain'd, Usage or Customs of our Realm of England to the contrary hereof in any wise notwithstanding

And in case it shall happen, that any doubts or questions shou'd arise concerning the true sence & understanding of any word, clause, or Sentence, contain'd in this our Present, Charter, We will, Ordain, and command, that at all times, & in all things such Interpretations be made thereof, & allow'd in all & every of our Courts whatsoever, as lawfully may be adjudged most advantageous & favourable to the said Edward, Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton & Sir William Berkley, their Heirs & Assigns, although Express. mention &c

Witness our self at Westminster, the thirtieth day of June, in the Seventeenth Year of our Reign

Per. ipsum Regem

At the Court of St. James's the 1st day of March, 1710.—

Present, The Queen's most Excellent Majesty in Council.

Upon reading this day at the Board a Representation from the Rt Honble the Lords Commissioners for trade & Plantations, in the Words following: In pursuance of your Majesty's Pleasure, Commissioners have been appointed on the Part of your Majesty's Colony of Virginia, as likewise on the Part of the Province of Carolina, for the settling the Bounds between those Governments; And they have met several times for that purpose, but have not agreed upon any one Point thereof, by reason of the trifling delays of the Carolina Commissioners, & of the many difficulties by them rais'd in relation to the proper Observations & survey they were to make. However, the Commissioners for Virginia have deliver'd to your Majesty's Lieut Governor of that Colony an Account of their proceedings, which Account has been under the Consideration of your Majesty's Council of Virginia, &c they have made a Report thereon to the said Lieut Governor, who haveing lately transmitted unto us a Copy of that Report, we take leave humbly to lay the Substance thereof before your Majesty, which is as follows:

That the Commissioners of Carolina are both of them Persons engag'd in Interest to obstruct the Settling the Boundaries between that Province and the Colony of Virginia; for one of

them has for several Years been Surveyor General of Carolina, has acquired to himself great Profit by surveying Lands within the controverted Bounds, & has taken up several Tracts of Land in his own Name, & sold the same to others, for which he stands still oblig'd obtain Patents from the Government of Carolina. The other of them is at this time Surveyor General, & hath the same Prospect of advantage by making future surveys within the said Bounds. That the Behavior of the Carolina Commissioners has tended visibly to no other End than to protract and defeat the Settling this Affair: and particularly Mr. Moseley has us'd so many Shifts & Excuses to disappoint all Conferences with the Commissioners of Virginia, as plainly shew his Aversion to proceed in a Business that tends so manifestly to his disadvantage. His prevaricating on this occasion has been so indiscreet and so unguarded, as to be discover'd in the presence of the Lieut Governor of Virginia. He started so many objections to the Powers granted to the Commissioners of that Colony, with design to render their conferences ineffectual, that his Joint Commissioner cou'd hardly find an excuse for him. And when the Lieut Governor had with much adoe prevail'd with the said Mr. Moseley to appoint a time for meeting the Commissioners of Virginia, & for bringing the necessary Instruments to take the Latitude of the Bounds in dispute, which Instruments he owned were ready in Carolina, he not only fail'd to comply with his own appointment, but after the Commissioners of Virginia had made a Journey to his House, and had attended him to the Places proper for observing the Latitude, he wou'd not take the trouble of carrying his own Instrument, but contented himself to find fault with the Quadrant produc'd by the Virginia Commissioners, tho that Instrument had been approv'd by the best Mathematicians, and is of universal Use. From all which it is evident how little hopes there are of Settling the Boundaries above-mention'd, in concert with the present Commissioners for Carolina. That tho the Bounds of the Carolina Charter are in exprefs words limited to Weyanoak Creek, lying in or about $36^{\circ} 30'$ of Northern Latitude, yet the Commissioners for Carolina have not by any of their Evidences pretended to prove any such Place as Weyanoak Creek, the amount of their Evidence reaching no further than to prove which is Weyanoak River, & even that is contradicted by affidavit taken on the part of Virginia; by which affidavits it appears that, before the Date of the Carolina Charter to this day, the place they pretend to be

Weyanoak River was, & is still, called Nottoway River. But supposing the same had been called Weyanoak River, it can be nothing to their purpose, there being a great difference between a River & a Creek. Besides, in that Country there are divers Rivers & Creeks of the same Name, as Potomeck River & Potomeck Creek, Rappahannock River, & Rappahannock Creek, & Several others, tho there are many Miles' distance between the mouths of these Rivers and the mouths of these Creeks. It is also observable, that the Witnesses on the Part of Carolina are all very Ignorant persons, & most of them of ill fame & Reputation, on which Account they had been forced to remove from Virginia to Carolina. Further, there appeared to be many contradictions in their Testimonys; whereas, on the other hand, the witnesses to prove that the Right to those Lands is in the Government of Virginia are Persons of good Credit, their knowledge of the Lands in question is more ancient than any of the Witnesses for Carolina, & their Evidence fully corroborated by the concurrent Testimony of the Tributary Indians. And that right is farther confirm'd by the Observations lately taken of the Latitude in those parts, by which tis plain, that the Creek proved to be Weyanoak Creek by the Virginia Evidences, & sometimes call'd Wicocon, answers best to the Latitude described in the Carolina Charter, for it lys in $36^{\circ} 40'$, which is ten Minutes to the Northward of the Limits described in the Carolina grant, Whereas Nottoway River, lys exactly in the Latitude of 37° , and can by no construction be suppos'd to be the Boundary described in their Charter; So that upon the whole Matter, if the Commissioners of Carolina had no other view than to clear the just right of the Proprietors, such undeniable Demonstrations wou'd be Sufficient to convince them; but the said Commissioners gave too much Cause to suspect that they mix their own private Interest with the Claim of the Proprietors, & for that reason endeavor to gain time in order to obtain Grants for the Land already taken up, and also to secure the rest on this occasion, we take notice, that they proceed to survey the Land in dispute, notwithstanding the assurance given by the Government of Carolina to the Contrary by their letter of the 17th of June, 1707, to the Government of Virginia, by which letter they promised that no lands shou'd be taken up within the controverted bounds till the same were settled.

Whereupon we humbly propose, that the Lords Proprietors be acquainted with the foregoing Complaint of the trifling

delays of their Commissioners, which delays tis reasonable to believe have proceeded from the self-Interest of those Commissioners, and that therefore your Majesty's pleasure be signify'd to the said Lords Proprietors, that by the first Opportunity they send Orders to their Governour or Commander in Chief of Carolina for the time being, to issue forth a new Commission, to the purport of that lately issued, thereby constituting two other Persons, not having any personal Interest in, or claim to, any of the Land lying within the Boundary's in the room of Edward Moseley & John Lawson. The Carolina Commissioners to be appointed being strictly required to finish their Survey, & to make a return thereof in conjunction with the Virginia Commissioners, within six months, to be computed from the time, that due notice shall be given by your Majesty's Lieut Governor of Virginia to the Governor or Commander in Chief of Carolina, of the time & place, which your Majesty's said Lieut Governor shall appoint for the first meeting of the Commissioners on one part & the other. In order whereunto we humbly offer, that directions be sent to the said Lieut Governor, to give such Notice accordingly; & if after Notice so given, the Carolina Commissioners shall refuse or neglect to Join with those on the part of Virginia, in making such survey, as likewise a Return thereof within the time before mention'd; that then and in such Case the Commissioners on the part of Virginia be directed to draw up an Account of the proper observations and Survey which they shall have made for ascertaining the Bounds between Virginia & Carolina, and to deliver the same in Writing under their Hands and Seals to the Lieut Governor and Council of Virginia, to the end the same may be laid before your Majesty, for your Majesty's final Determination therein, within, with regard to the Settling of those Boundaries; the Lords Proprietors haveing, by an Instrument under their Hands, submitted the same to Your Majesty's royal determination, which instrument, dated in March, 1708, is lying in this Office.

And lastly, we humbly propose, that your Majesty's further pleasure be signifyd to the said Lords Proprietors, and in like manner to the Lieut Governor of Virginia, that no Grants be pass'd by either of those Governments of any of the Lands lying within the controverted Bounds, until such Bounds shall be ascertain'd and settled as aforesaid, whereby it may appear whether those Lands do of Right belong to your Majesty, or to the Lords Proprietors of Carolina.

Her Majesty in Council, approveing of the said Representation, is pleas'd to order, as it is hereby ordered, that the Rt Honble the Lords Commissioners for Trade & Plantations Do signifye her Majesty's pleasure herein to her Majesty's Lieut Governor or Commander in Chief of Virginia for the time being, and to all Persons to whom it may belong, as is propos'd by their Lordships in the said Representation, and the Rt Honble the Lords Proprietors of Carolina are to do what on their part does appertain.

EDW SOUTHWELL.

PROPOSALS for determining the Controversy relating to the Bounds between the Governments of Virginia and North Carolina, most humbly offered for his Majesty's Royal Approbation, and for the Consent of the Rt Honble the Lords Proprietors of Carolina.

Forasmuch as the dispute between the said two Governments about their true Limits continues still, notwithstanding the several meetings of the Commissioners, and all the proceedings of many Years past, in order to adjust that affair, & seeing no speedy Determination is likely to ensue, unless some Medium be found out, in which both Partys may incline to acquiesce, wherefore both the underwritten Governors having met, and consider'd the prejudice both to the King & the Lords Proprietors' Interest, by the continuance of this contest, and truly endeavouring a Decision, which they Judge comes nearest the Intention of Royal Charter granted to the Lords Proprietors, do, with the advice & consent of their respective Councils, propose as follows.

That from the mouth of Corotuck River or Inlet, & setting the Compass on the North Shoar, thereof a due West Line be run & fairly mark'd, & if it happen to cut Chowan River, between the mouths of Nottoway River and Wicocon Creek, then shall the same direct Course be continued towards the Mountains, and be ever deem'd the Sole dividing line between Virginia & Carolina.

That if the said West Line cuts Chowan River to the Southward of Wicocon Creek, then from point of Intersection the Bounds shall be allow'd to continue up the middle of the said

Chowan River to the middle of the Entrance into the said Wicocon Creek, and from thence a due West Line shall divide the said two Governments.

That if a due West Line shall be found to pass through Islands or to cut out small Slips of Land, which might much more conveniently be included in one Province or the other by Natural Water Bounds, In such Cases the Persons appointed for runing the Line shall have power to settle Natural Bounds, provided the Commissioners of both Sides agree thereto, and that all such Variations from the West Line, be particularly Noted in the Maps or Plats, which they shall return, to be put upon the Records of both Governments, all which is Humbly submitted by

CHABLES EDEN.
A. SPOTSWOOD.

Order of the King and Council upon the foregoing Proposals, At the Court of St. James's the 28th day of March, 1729. Present, the King's most Excellent Majesty in Council.

WHEREAS it has been represented to his Majesty at the Board, that for adjusting the disputes, which have Subsisted for many Years past, between the Colonys of Virginia and North Carolina, concerning their true Boundarys, the late Governors of the said colonys did some time since agree upon certain Proposals for regulating the said Boundarys for the future, to which Proposals the Lords Proprietors of Carolina have given their assent; And whereas the said Proposals were this day presented to his Majesty as proper for his Royal Approbation,

His Majesty is thereupon pleas'd, with the Advice of his Privy Council, to approve of the said Proposals, a copy whereof is hereunto annex't, and to order, as it is hereby order'd, that the Governor or Commander in Chief of the Colony of Virginia, do settle the said Boundarys, in conjunction with the Governor of North Carolina, agreeable to the said Proposals.

EDWARD SOUTHWELL.

*The Lieut Governor of Virginia's Commission in obedience
to His Majesty's Order.*

GEORGE the second, by the Grace of God, of great Britain, France and Ireland King, Defender of the Faith, to our trusty and well beloved William Byrd, Richard Fitz-William, and William Dandridge, Esqrs., members of our council of the Colony and Dominion of Virginia, Greeting: Whereas our late Royal Father of Blessed memory was graciously pleas'd, by Order in his Privy Council, bearing date the 28 day of March 1727, to approve of certain Proposals agreed upon by Alexander Spotswood, Esqr. late Lieut Governor of Virginia, on the one part, and Charles Eden Esqr. late Governoor of the Province of North Carolina, for determining the Controversy relating to the Bounds between the said two Governments, and was farther pleased to direct and Order, that the said Boundaries should be laid out & settled agreeable to the said Proposals. Know ye, therefore, that reposing special trust and confidence in your Ability & Provident circumspection, have assign'd, constituted & appointed, & by these presents do assign, constitute & appoint you & every of you jointly & severally, our Commissioners for & on behalf of our Colony & Dominion of Virginia, to meet the commissioners appointed or to be appointed on the part of the Province of North Carolina, and in conjunction with them to cause a Line or Lines of Division to be run and markt, to divide the said two Governments according to the proposals above-mention'd, & the order of our late Royal Father, Copies of both which you will herewith receive. and we do further give and grant unto you, and in case of the Death or absence of any of you, such of you as shall be present, full power and Authority to treat & agree with the said Commissioners of the Province of North Carolina on such rules and Methods as you shall Judge most expedient for the adjusting and finally determining all disputes or controversies which may arise, touching any Islands or other small Slips of Land which may happen to be intersected or cut off by the dividing Line aforesaid, and which may with more conveniency be included in the One Province or the other by natural water bounds, agreeable to the proposals aforementioned, and generally to do and perform all matters and things requisite for the final determination and Settlement of the said Boundaries, according to the said Proposals.

And to the end our Service herein may not be disappointed through the refusal or delay of the Commissioners for the Province of North Carolina, to act in Conjunction with you in settling the Boundaries aforesaid, we do hereby give & grant unto you, or such of you as shall be present at the time and place appointed for running the dividing Line aforesaid, full power and Authority to cause the said Line to be run and mark'd out, conformable to the said proposals, having due regard to the doing equal Justice to Us, and to the Lords Proprietors of Carolina, any refusal, disagreement, or opposition of the said Commissioners of North Carolina notwithstanding. And in that case we do hereby require you to make a true report of your proceedings to our Lieut Governor, or Commander in Chief of Virginia, in order to be laid before us for our approbation, and final determination herein. And in case any Person or Persons whatsoever shall presume to disturb, Molest or resist you, or any of the Officers or Persons by your direction, in running the said Line, and executing the Powers herein given you, we do by these presents Give and Grant unto you, or such of you as shall be attending the service aforesaid, full power & Authority by Warrant under your or any of your hands and Seals, to order and command all and every the Militia Officers in our counties of Princess Anne, Norfolk, Nansemond, & Isle of Wight, or other the adjacent Counties, together with the Sheriff of each of the said Counties, or either of them, to raise the Militia & posse of the said Several Counties, for the removing all force and opposition, which shall or may be made to you in the due Execution of this our Commission, & we do hereby will and require, as well the Officers of the said militia, as all other our Officers & loving Subjects within the said Counties, & all others whom it may concern, to be obedient, aiding & assisting unto you in all & Singular the Premises. And we do in like manner command & require you, to cause fair Maps & descriptions of the said Dividing Line, and the remarkable places through which it shall pass, to be made and return'd to our Lieut Governor or Commander in Chief of our said Colony for the time being, in order to be entered on Record in the proper Offices within our said Colony. Provided that you do not, by colour of this our Commission, take upon you or determine any Private man's property, in or to the Lands which shall by the said dividing Line be included within the Limits of Virginia, nor of any other matter or thing that doth not relate

immediately to the adjusting, settling & final Determination of the Boundary aforesaid, conformable to the Proposals hereinbefore mention'd, and not otherwise. In Witness whereof we have caused these presents to be made. Witness our trusty and well beloved William Gooch, Esqr. our Lieut Governor & Commander in Chief of our Colony & Dominion of Virginia, under the seal of our said Colony, at Williamsburgh the 14th day of December, 1727, in the first Year of our Reign.

WILLIAM GOOCH.

*The Governour of N. Carolina's Commission in Obedience
to His Majesty's Order.*

Sir Richard Everard, Baronet, Governor, Captain General, Admiral, and Commander in Chief of the said Province: To Christopher Gale Esqr. Chief Justice, John Lovick, Esqr., Secretary, Edward Moseley, Esqr., Surveyor General & William Little, Esqr., Attorney General, Greeting: Whereas many disputes & differences have formerly been between the Inhabitants of this province and those of his Majesty's Colony of Virginia, concerning the Boundaries and Limits between the said two Governments, which having been duly considered by Charles Eden, Esqr., late Governor of this Province, and Alexander Spotswood, Esqr., late Governor of Virginia, they agreed to certain proposals for determining the said controversy, & humbly offer'd the same for his Majesty's Royal Approbation, and the consent of the true & absolute Lords Proprietors of Carolina. and his Majesty having been pleas'd to signify his Royal approbation of those proposals (consent'd unto by the true and absolute Lords Proprietors of Carolina) and given directions for adjusting & settling the Boundaries as near as may be to the said Proposals:

I, therefore, reposing especial trust and confidence in you, the said Christopher Gale, John Lovick, Edward Moseley and William Little, to be Commissioners, on the part of the true and absolute Lords Proprietors, and that you in conjunction with such Commissioners as shall be nominated for Virginia, use your utmost Endeavours, and take all necessary care in adjusting and settling the said boundaries, by drawing such a distinct Line or Lines of Division between the said two Provinces, as near

as reasonable you can to the Proposals made by the two former Governours, and the Instructions herewith given you. Given at the Council Chamber in Edenton, under my hand, and the Seal of the Colony, the 21st day of February, anno Dom 1727, and in the first year of the Reign of our sovereign Lord, King George the Second.

RICHARD EVERARD.

*The Protest of the Carolina Commissioners, against our
Proceeding on the Line without them.*

We the Underwritten Commissioners for the Government of N. Carolina, in conjunction with the Commissioners on the part of Virginia, having run the Line for the division of the two Colonys from Corotuck Inlet, to the South Branch of Roanoak River; being in the whole about 170 Miles, and near 50 Miles without the Inhabitants, being of Opinion we had run the Line as far as would be requisite for a long time, Judged the carrying it farther would be a needless charge and trouble. And the Grand Debate which had so long Subsisted between the two Governments, about Wyanoke River or Creek, being settled at our former meeting in the Spring, when we were ready on our parts to have gone with the Line to the utmost Inhabitants, which if it had been done, the Line at any time after might have been continued at an easy expence by a Surveyor on each side; and if at any time hereafter there shou'd be occasion to carry the Line on further than we have now run it, which we think will not be in an Age or two, it may be done in the same easy manner, without the great Expence that now attends it. And on a Conference of all the Commissioners, we have communicated our sentiments thereon, and declar'd our Opinion, that we had gone as far as the Service required, and thought proper to proceed no farther; to which it was answered by the Commissioners for Virginia, that they Should not regard what we did, but if we desisted, they wou'd proceed without us. But we, conceiving by his Majesty's Order in Council they were directed to Act in conjunction with the Commissioners appointed for Carolina, & having accordingly run the Line jointly so far, and Exchanged Plans, thought they cou'd not carry on the Bounds singly; but that their proceedings without

us wou'd be irregular & invalid, and that it wou'd be no Bound-ary, and thought proper to enter our Dissent thereto. Wherefore, for the reasons aforesaid, in the name of His Excellency the Lord Palatine, and the rest of the true and absolute Lords proprietors of Carolina, we do hereby dissent and Disallow of any farther proceedings with the Bounds without our Concurrence, and pursuant to our Instructions do give this our DISSENT in Writing.

EDWARD MOSELY.

WILL LITTLE.

C. GALE.

J. LOVICK.

October 7th, 1728.

The Answer of the Virginia Commissioners to the foregoing protest.

WHEREAS, on the 7th of October last, a paper was deliver'd to us by the Commissioners of N. Carolina, in the Stile of a Protest, against our carrying any farther, without them, the dividing Line between the 2 Governments, we, the underwritten Commissioners on the part of Virginia, having maturely considered the reasons offer'd in the said PROTEST, why those Gentlemen retir'd so soon from that Service, beg leave to return the following answer :

They are pleas'd in the first place to alledge, by way of Reason, that having run the Line near 50 Miles beyond the Inhabitants, it was Sufficient for a long time, in their Opinion for an Age or two. To this we answer that, by breaking off so soon, they did but imperfectly obey his Majesty's Order, assented to by the Lords Proprietors. The plain meaning of that Order was, to ascertain the Bounds betwixt the two Governments as far towards the Mountains as we cou'd, that neither the King's Grants may hereafter encroach on the Lords Proprietors', nor theirs on the Right of his Majesty. And tho the distance towards the great Mountains be not precisely determin'd, yet surely the West line shou'd be carry'd as near them as may be, that both the King's Lands and those of their Lordships, may be taken up the faster, and that his Majesty's Subjects may as soon as possible extend themselves to that Natural Barrier. This they will certainly do in a few Years, when they know distinctly in which Government they may enter for the Land, as they

have already done in the more northern Parts of Virginia. So that 'tis Strange the Carolina Commissioners should affirm, that the distance only of 50 miles above the Inhabitants wou'd be sufficient to carry the Line for an Age or two, especially considering that, two or three days before the date of their Protest, Mr. Mayo had enter'd with them for 2000 Acres of Land, within 5 Miles of the Place where they left off. Besides, if we reflect on the richness of the Soil in those parts, & the convenience for Stock, we may foretell, without the Spirit of Divination, that there will be many Settlements higher than those Gentlemen went, in less than ten Years, and Perhaps in half that time.

Another reason mention'd in the Protest for their retiring so soon from the Service is, that their going farther wou'd be a needless charge and Trouble. And they alledge that the rest may be done by one Surveyor on a side, in an easy manner, whenever it shall be thought necessary.

To this we answer, that Frugality for the Public is a rare virtue, but when the public Service must Suffer by it, it degenerates into a Vice. And this will ever be the Case when Gentlemen Execute the orders of their Superiors by halves. but had the Carolina Commissioners been sincerely frugal for their Government, why did they carry out Provisions Sufficient to support them and their Men for ten Weeks, when they intended not to tarry half that time? This they must own to be true, since they brought 1000 lbs. of Provisions along with them. Now, after so great an Expence in their preparations, it had been no mighty Addition to their Charge, had they endured the Fatigue 5 or 6 Weeks longer. It wou'd at most have been no more than they must be at, whenever they finish their Work, even tho they shou'd fancy it proper to trust a matter of that consequence to the Management of one Surveyor. Such a one must have a Number of Men along with him, both for his assistance and Defense, and those Men must have Provisions to Support them.

These are all the reasons these Gentlemen think fit to mention in their protest, tho they had in truth a more Powerful argument for retiring so abruptly, which, because they forgot, it will be neighbourly to help them out. The provisions they intended to bring along with them, for want of Horses to carry them, were partly dropp't by the way, & what they cou'd bring was hobbled so ill, that after 18 days, (which was the whole time we

had them in our Company,) they had no more left, by their own confession, than two Pounds of Biscuit for each Man, to carry them home. However, tho this was an unanswerable Reason for Gentlemen for leaving the Business unfinished, it was none at all for us, who had at that time Bread Sufficient for 7 Weeks longer. Therefore, lest their want of Management might put a stop to his Majesty's Service, & frustrate his Royal intentions, we judg'd it our Duty to proceed without them, and have extended the Dividing Line so far West as to leave the great Mountains on each hand to the Eastward of us. And this we have done with the same fidelity & exactness as if the Gentlemen had continued with us. Our surveyors (whose Integrity I am perswaded they will not call in Question) continued to Act under the same Oath, which they had done from the beginning. Yet, notwithstanding all this, if the Government of N. Carolina shou'd not hold itself bound by that part of the Line which we made without the Assistance of the Commissioners, yet we shall have this benefit in it at least, that his Majesty will know how far his Lands reach towards the South, & consequently where his Subjects may take it up, & how far they may be granted without Injustice to the Lords Proprietors. To this we may also add, that having the Authority of our Commission, to act without the Commissioners of Carolina, in Case of their disagreement or refusal, we thought ourselves bound upon their Retreat to finish the Line without them, lest his Majesty's Service might Suffer by any honour or neglect on their part.

WILLIAM DANDRIDGE.
W. BYRD.

*The Names of the Commissioners to direct the running of the Line
between Virginia and North Carolina.*

WILLIAM BYRD,	}	Commissioners for Virginia.
RICH'D FITZ-WILLIAM,		
WILLIAM DANDRIDGE,		
Esqrs,		

CHRISTOPHER GALE,	}	Commissioners for Carolina.
JOHN LOVEWICK.		
EDWARD MOSELEY,		
W'M LITTLE,		
Esqrs,		

ALEX'R IRVIN,
WILLIAM MAYO, } Surveyors for Virginia.

EDW'D MOSELEY,
SAM'LL SWAN, } Surveyors for N. Carolina.

THE REV'D PETER FOUNTAIN, Chaplain.

*Names of the Men employ'd on the part of Virginia to run the Line
between that Colony and N. Carolina.*

ON THE FIRST EXPEDITION.

1. Peter Jones,
2. Thomas Jones,
3. Thomas Short,
4. Robert Hix,
5. John Evans,
6. Stephen Evans,
7. John Ellis,
8. John Ellis, Jr.
9. Thomas Wilfon,
10. George Tilman,
11. Charles Kimbal,
12. George Hamilton,
13. Robert Allen,
14. Thomas Jones, Jun^r
15. James Petillo,
16. Richard Smith,
17. John Rice.

ON THE 2D EXPEDITION.

Peter Jones,
Thomas Jones,
Thomas Short,
Robert Hix,
John Evans,
Stephen Evans,
John Ellis,
John Ellis, Jr.
Thomas Wilfon,
George Tilman,
Charles Kimbal,
George Hamilton,
Thomas Jones, Jun^r
James Petillo,
Rich'd Smith,
Abraham Jones,
Edward Powell,
William Pool,
William Calvert,
James Whitlock,
Thomas Page.

*Account of the Expence of running the Line between Virginia and
N. Carolina.*

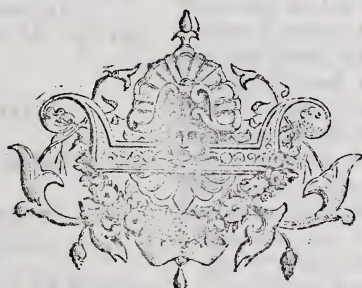
To the Men's Wages in Currant Money	-	-	227	10	0
To Sundry Disbursements for Provisions, &c.	-	-	174	01	6
To Paid the Men for 7 Horses lost	-	-	44	0	0

£495 11 6

Dividing Line.

				225 -
				226
The Sum of £495 11 6 Current Money reduc't at				
15 p cent. Sterling amounts to	-	-	-	430 8 10
To paid to colo Byrd	-	-	-	142 5 7
To paid to colo Dandridge	-	-	-	142 5 7
To paid Mr. Fitz-William	-	-	-	94 0 0
To paid to the Chaplain, Mr. Fountain	-	-	-	20 0 0
To paid to Mr. William Mayo	-	-	-	75 0 0
To paid to Mr. Alex Irvin	-	-	-	75 0 0
To paid for a Tent and Marquis	-	-	-	20 0 0
				<hr/>
				£1000 0 0
				<hr/>

This Summ was discharg'd by a Warrant out of His Ma-
 esty's Quitrents from the Lands in Virginia.





I N D E X .

- A**DVENTURERS' Visit, America, 3.
Albemarle, Duke of, 197-211
Albemarle Sound, 54, 59.
Alexander, Sir William, 9.
Allen, Col., 18.
Allen, Robert, 224.
Allen, Widow, 18.
Alligators, 182.
Ambergris, 165.
Amidas, fails for Virginia, 2.
Anderson, Charles, 69.
Andros, Sir Edmond, 9.
Angelica Plant, 99.
Answer to Protest of Carolina Commissioners, 221.
Antidotes to Poison, 82, 84, 89, 90.
Appalachian Mountain, 152.
Appamattock River, 86, 137-193.
Appendix, 197.
Aprons, Indian, 171.
Aramanchy River, 181.
Argall, Samuel, 10.
Arms of England, erected in Virginia, 92.
Arrows, Obsolete, 73.
Ashley, Lord, 197-211.
- B**ABOONS, Mode of Robbing Orchards, 100.
Back Bay, 29.
Badges adopted, 135.
Bainton, Epaphroditus, 86.
Ballance, Mr., 35.
Baltimore, Lord, Grant to, 11.
Barlow, fails for Virginia, 2.
Bears, 89, 98, 113, 117, 120, 125, 126, 127, 128, 130, 135, 140, 145, 158, 167, 175; Description of, 167; Fishing by, 112; Meat, Effects of, 145, 187; Oil, 163; Story, 127-155; Tracks, 128.
Beasts of Burden, unknown to Indians, 157.
Bearkin, 185-187; Theology of, 106.
Beaver Creek, 91; Dams, 91; Mode of taking, 91.
Beavers, 175-177; how taken, 176.
Beaver Pond, 83.
Bell's Island, 23.
Berkley, Lord, Grant to, 11.
Berkley, Sir William, 14, 197-211.
Birth Day of His Majesty, 143.
Bladen, Colonel, 31.
Blewing Creek, 93, 173.
Bolling, Colonel, 191, 193.
Bolton's Ferry, 70.
Pombo, a Drink, described, 57.
Boston founded, 8.
Boundaries of Carolina, 15.
Boundary Commission formed, 17; assemble, 23; Survey began, 25, 27; Curiosity occasioned by, 30, 46; Dismal Swamp passed, 61; adjourn till Autumn, 70; Survey resumed, 78; abandoned by Carolina Commissioners, 95; continued by Virginia Commissioners, 96; Survey suspended, 133; returns to Settlement, 186; concluding Remarks, 194; royal

- Approbation of, 211; Appointment of, 217; Names of, 223.
 Boyle, Mr., 74.
 Brandy, Effects of, 79; lost, 80.
 Brinkley, Peter, 52, 54.
 Brunswick County, 83.
 Buckingham County, 13.
 Buffalo Creek, 97, 170.
 Buffalo, 172; how tamed, 173; feek, 94, 172; Tracks, 92.
 Byrd, William, 217, 223.
CABINS, Indian, 71.
 Cabin Branch, 84.
 Cabot, Sebastian, 9.
 Calvert, William, 224.
 Canal proposed, 54.
 Candleberry, Myrtle, 19.
 Canes, Manner of Growth, 102.
 Canoe Creek, 102.
 Canoe Landing, 86.
 Cape Fear River, 181.
 Carolina Charter, 197; granted, 14, 15.
 Carolina Tea, 24.
 Carr, Sir Robert, 10.
 Cart for Provisions, 80, 85, 87.
 Carterett, Sir George, 197-211.
 Casquade Creek, 114, 115, 156.
 Catawbas, 67, 120, 141, 175, 180, 181, 183, 188.
 Cattle, how kept, 32, 46.
 Cedar Island, 28.
 Censure of Carolina Commissioners, 211.
 Chaplain to Boundary Commission, 17, 22, 30, 43, 44, 49, 57, 63, 77, 79, 80, 83, 95, 135, 145, 146, 152, 170, 171, 193; Name of, 224.
 Charibbe Islands, Route by Way of, 4.
 Charity Mountains, 194.
 Charming of Serpents, 87.
 Charter of Carolina, 197.
 Chastity, Indian, 187.
 Cherokees, 141.
 Chester County, 13.
 Chesapeake Bay, entered by Colonists, 4.
 Chowan River, 66, 215, 216.
 Christenings, 44, 46, 57, 63, 64, 69, 70, 71, 80, 83, 87, 188.
 Church first erected, 5; none in North Carolina, 65; none at Edenton, 59.
 Churches' Island, 23.
 Cider, Fondness for, 69.
 Clarendon, Earl of, 197-211.
 Cliff Creek, 164.
 Climate, Remarks on, 159, 160.
 Cocquade Creek, 101.
 Cohungaroota, 137.
 Cohunks, 112.
 Cold, Benefits of, 160.
 Colleton, Sir John, 197-211.
 Colleton Island, 2, 14.
 Colonization of Virginia began, 2.
 Colt's-foot, Plant, 97.
 Commission of Lieut. Governor of Virginia, 217; Governor of North Carolina, 219.
 Confirmation of Boundary, 211.
 Connea Creek, 174.
 Connecticut settled, 8.
 Consciences troubled, 95.
 Corn raised, 63.
 Coropeak, 45, 52.
 Corotuck Inlet, 18, 21, 23, 25, 26, 36, 67; Magistrate, 65; River, 215, 220.
 Cotton, 41-63.
 Couriers de Bois, 152.
 Crane Creek, 181.
 Cranes, Flight of, 69.
 Craford, Mr., 19.
 Craven, Earl of, 197-211.
 Crocodile, 182.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 8.
 Crooked Creek, 128, 129, 130, 144.
 Cub, Adventure with, 154.
 Custard Complexion explained, 32.
 Cypress Swamp, 45.

- D**ALICARLIA, 12.
 Dances, Indian, 72.
 Dandridge, William, 217, 223.
 Dan River, 86, 101, 111, 112, 114, 116, 156, 160, 164.
 Deep River, 181.
 Deer, 91, 93, 97, 98, 113, 117, 126, 143, 145, 146, 152, 158, 161, 166, 177; hunting, 109, 170; Skins, 162.
 Despairing Lover's Leap, 131.
 Difinal Swamp, 19, 37, 38, 41-45, 47, 53; Line through, finished, 61.
 Dittany, a Remedy, 163.
 Dividing Line, Beginning of, 26, 27.
 Dogwood Bark as a Medicine, 80.
 Dolfer's Island, 27.
 Dreams, 144.
 Duke of York, Grant to, 11.
 Dutch settle New York, 10.
- E**CHO, remarkable, 45, 191.
 Eden, Charles, 17, 216, 217.
 Edenton, N. C., 57-60, 63.
 Elizabeth, Queen, grants Virginia, 1.
 Elizabeth River, 19, 20, 41, 53.
 Elk, 134.
 Ellis, John, 224.
 Ellis, John, Jr., 224.
 Embry, Captain, 191.
 Emigration began, 3.
 Eno River, 180.
 Epigram, 76.
 Evans, John, 224.
 Evans, Stephen, 224.
 Everard, Sir Richard, 17, 219, 220.
 Expenses of Survey, 224.
 Eyland, Mr., 30.
- F**ECUNDITY, Secret of, 145.
 Fences, how made, 59.
 Fern Root, an Antidote to Rattlesnake Bite, 88.
- Fires, 120, 128, 129.
 Fire hunting, 170.
 Fire-arms among Indians, 73, 74.
 Fish, poisonous, 166.
 Fitzwilliam, Richard, 95, 96, 217, 223.
 Flat River, 180.
 Flax, 41.
 Foxes, 58.
 Fort, Indian, 71.
 Fountain, Rev. Peter, 224.
 Fountain's Creek, 80, 81, 83, 84.
 French in Canada, 6; settle Nova Scotia, 9; Territory of the, 138.
 Frog, Egyptian, 177.
 Frost, 89.
 Fugitive Slaves, 34.
 Future Life, Indian Belief of, 106.
- G**ALE, Christopher, 49, 219, 221, 223.
 Gall-bush, 19, 36.
 Geese, wild, 87, 111, 112.
 Georgia, Trade with, 142.
 Gibbs, Governor, 31.
 Ginfeng, 161.
 Glue Broth, 147.
 Gluttony, 139.
 Godwin, Mr., 19.
 Gooch, William, 17, 219.
 Goose, cheated by an Echo, 191.
 Gout, Treatment of, 135, 138.
 Graffenried, Baron de, 174.
 Grapes, 98.
 Great Creek, 89, 90, 178, 179.
 Great Spirit, 97, 106.
 Green Sea, 53.
 Griffin, Charles, 75.
 Gunpowder Plot, 11.
- H**AMILTON, George, 224.
 Hampden visits New England, 8.
 Harding, William, 27.
 Harrison, Henry, 77.

Haw old Fields, 180.
 Haw Tree Creek, 89.
 Heath, John, 29, 30.
 Hennepin, Father, Allusion to, 63.
 Hermit, Residence of, 26.
 Hickory Trees, 113.
 Hicootomy River, 94.
 Hico River, 93, 94, 96, 172.
 Highland Ponds, 116, 159.
 Hill, John, 80.
 Hix, Robert, 224.
 Hix's Creek, 164.
 Hixe, George, 187.
 Horses for Wood Service, 150;
 Sores on, 166; left or lost, 125,
 126, 142, 149, 154, 156, 167.
 Horse Flies, 163.
 Hospitality, Indian, 73.
 Hostages, Indian, 75.
 Hudson, Henry, 10.
 Hunter hired, 88.
 Hunting in a Ring, 140, 171.
 Hurricane, Effects of, 18.
IBIS, Egyptian, 177.
 Indian Chastity, 73; Religion,
 106; Superstition, 103; Trade, 2,
 141, 180, 183; Wars, 120, 184.
 Indians as Horsemen, 188; Fail-
 ure to civilize, 74, 76; have no
 Sabbath, 153; Marches of, 157;
 met, 66; Nottoway, 71; Sapo-
 ni, 88.
 Indolence of Settlers, 56, 184,
 185.
 Insects, 162.
 Instructions of Surveyors, 25.
 Inundations, 68.
 Ipocoacanna, 85.
 Irvin, Mr., 54, 158.
 Irvin River, 116, 118, 126, 128,
 135, 145, 152.
 Irwin, Alexander, 17, 145, 224.
 Isle of Wight County, 68.
 Ives, Timothy, 41.

JAMES River, 136, 137, 193.
 Jamestown, 5.
 Japon, a Plant, 24.
 Jones, Abraham, 224.
 Jones, Peter, 224.
 Jones, Thomas, 224.
 Jones, Thomas, Jr., 224.
 Jumping Creek, 91.
 Justice in Corrotuck Precinct, 65.

KEITH, Cornelius, 184.
 Kent County, 13.
 Kiawan Mountain, 140.
 Kimbal, Charles, 224.
 Kinchin, Mr., 69, 70, 78, 79.
 Kindred, Mr., 70.
 Kinquotan, 5.
 Knot's Island, 23, 27, 28, 29.

LATITUDES observed, 25,
 146.
 Lawton, John, 66, 174, 214.
 Licences to Traders, 142.
 Light, Meteoric, 115.
 Lightning, Effects of, 67, 149, 150;
 Philosophy of, 110.
 Liquors, Scent of, 49; spent, 96.
 Little, William, 57, 219, 221, 223.
 Little River, 53, 180.
 Lizzard's Creek, 84.
 Locust Thicket, 129.
 Log Houses, 59.
 Louie, to pilot North, 40.
 Lovers' Leap, 140.
 Lovick, John, 219, 221, 223.
 Lowland Creek, 112, 156.
 Lubberland, 56.
 Luke Island, 197.

MAGNETIC Variation, 24,
 27, 67, 90, 143.
 Maidenhair, Plant, 97.
 Man lost, 124, 140, 142.
 Mandeville, Sir John, 105.
 Maps of Boundary, 70, 95, 96.
 Marble, 114.

- Marriages, 44, 46; with Indians, 76, 77.
 Marston, Mr., 21.
 Martha's Vineyard settled, 7.
 Martyrdom of Nuns, 79.
 Maryland taken from Virginia, 11.
 Maffamony Creek, 7, 177.
 Massachusetts Charter, 9; Colony, 7.
 Mathias, River of, 197.
 Matrimony Creek, 149.
 Mayo, Joseph, 63.
 Mayo, William, 17, 54, 222, 224.
 Mayo River, 126, 127.
 Mead, Andrew, 42, 49.
 Medicines furnished Surveyors, 38.
 Meherin Indians, 66.
 Meherin River, 67, 70, 80, 81, 187, 190.
 Men employed on Survey, Names, 224.
 Merchant, Mr., 31.
 Militia Training, 70.
 Milk, Scarcity of, 32.
 Mines, Prospect of finding, 138.
 Miry Creek, 126.
 Missionaries, 60.
 Moni-see Ford, 86.
 Moratuck River, 174.
 Moseley, Edward, 16, 18, 63, 79, 85, 212, 214, 219, 223, 224.
 Mountains, 103, 128, 131, 136, 140; as a Barrier, 138.
 Mules, 150.
 Mumford, Colonel, 87, 179, 185, 193.
 Music, Power of, 167, 168.
 Muskeetos, 28, 30, 46, 59, 164.
NANSEMOND River, 19, 42, 50, 53, 54, 69.
 Nauvafa, 181.
 Neuse River, 174.
 Newcastle County, 13.
 New England, set apart from Virginia, 6; Preachers, chance for, 43; Traders, 23.
 New Hampshire settled, 8.
 New Haven settled, 8.
 New Inlet, 23.
 New Scotland, 9.
 New Jersey settled, 12.
 New Plymouth settled, 7.
 New York settled, 10.
 Nicholson, General, 10.
 Norfolk, 19.
 North Carolina, Settlement of Boundaries of, 15; in Reference for, 65; no Churches in, 65; lawless, 65.
 Northern's Creek, 33.
 North River, 28, 30, 53.
 North West River, 21, 22, 31, 33, 53.
 Norway Mice, 62.
 Noses affected by Disease, 33.
 Nottoway River, 16, 66, 67, 70, 192, 213, 215.
 Nottoway Town, 71.
 Nuns, Story of, 189, 190.
 Nut-Bush Creek, 90, 178.
 Nut Oil, 113.
OCCAANECHY Indian, 188, 190.
 Ohimpamony Creek, 91, 175.
 Olive Trees, 160.
 Opossum, 143.
 Orchards, 58, 69.
 Order of King and Council upon Proposals, 216.
 Otters, 178.
PACO, a Beast of Burthen, 157.
 Page, Thomas, 224.
 Paint-Creek, 90.
 Pamptico River, 180.
 Panthers, 117.
 Paradise, Notions of, 106.
 Paraquets injure Orchards, 58.
 Parker, Richard, 64, 70.

Partridge, Mountain, 100.
 Pasquetunk, 53.
 Pea Creek, 84.
 Peak, [Peague,] 72.
 Pedee River, 181.
 Penn, William, 13.
 Pennsylvania granted, 13.
 Penny Royal, a Remedy, 163.
 Pequimons, 53.
 Petillo, James, 224.
 Philadelphia, 13.
 Phipps, Sir William, 9.
 Phylarrea, 24.
 Pigeons, 119.
 Pidgeon-Roost Creek, 85, 87.
 Pines, 55.
 Plymouth Grant, 6.
 Pocofon, 30, 31, 33, 35, 66.
 Pochoon, 77.
 Point Comfort, 4.
 Poisoned Fields, 89.
 Polecats, 192.
 Pool, William, 224.
 Pork, Effects of, 32, 33.
 Port Royal taken, 9.
 Posts to mark Boundary, 63, 64.
 Potomac River, 137, 213.
 Poverty, wretched Scene of, 184.
 Powhatan River, 4.
 Prescot Landing, 21.
 Presents from Indians, 77.
 Prisoners taken by Indians, 122.
 Proposals for determining Controversy, 215.
 Protest of Carolina Commissioners, 96, 220.
 Provisions, Amount of, 78, 79.
 Pym visits New England, 8.

QUAKERS, 12, 13; Quaker
 Meeting-houses, 42.
 Quern Stones, 184.

RACCOON, 130.
 Raft, 154.
 Rappahannock, 213.

Rattle-snakes, 70, 82-84, 87; Mode
 of catching Prey, 87; Oil, 139.
 Rattle-snake Root, 82, 83, 90.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 1, 2, 3.
 Religion of Indians, 106.
 Rhode Island settled, 7.
 Rice, John, 224.
 Riley, Miles, 185.
 Roanoke River, 81, 84-87, 94,
 101, 137, 184, 188, 194, 220.
 Roanoke Inlet, 2, 3.
 Rockahominy, 109, 121, 146, 148.
 Rosemary, wild, 110.
 Rum, known as "Kill Devil," 57;
 Indians fond of, 74.

SABBATH-Breaking, 153, 170.
 Sable Creek, 111, 158.
 St. Andrew's Cross, 84.
 Santee River, 181, 182.
 Sapponi Indians, 75, 88, 187, 188.
 Sapponi Chappel, 192.
 Sawros, 113.
 Saxapahaw River, 180, 181.
 Scalping, 122, 186.
 Senecas, 174.
 Seneca Rattle-snake Root, 88, 139.
 Sharantow River, 137.
 Sheep, raising of, 81.
 Shells, 24.
 Short, Thomas, 224.
 Silk Grass, 171.
 Sleeping, Manner of, 131.
 Smith, Capt. John, 4.
 Smith, Richard, 224.
 Smoking introduced at Court, 3.
 Snakes, 160.
 Somerton Creek, 66.
 Sommerton Chapel, 65.
 South Virginia, how defined, 1.
 Southwell, Edw., 215, 216.
 Spermaceti, 166.
 Spice Trees, 93.
 Spired Leaf Silk Grass, 24.
 Spight, Thomas, 45.
 Spight, William, 65.

- Spotswood, Col. A., 17, 75, 76, 188, 216, 217, 219.
 Squirrels, 132, 179.
 Star Grafts, 82.
 Staunton River, 86.
 Steukenhocks, 188.
 Stinker, 193.
 Stony Creek, 192.
 Sturgeon Creek, 190.
 Sturgeon Fishery, 190.
 Sugar from Trees, 92.
 Sugar-Tree Creek, 93, 172.
 Sundays disregarded, 45.
 Superstition, Indian, 97, 103.
 Surveyors appointed, 17; Names of, 224.
 Suffex County, 13.
 Swan, Samuel, 18, 23, 51, 54, 63, 79, 224.
 Swedes, Settlement of, 12.
 Sweet Gum Tree, 165.
TAR, 56, 63.
 Tarantula Bites, how cured, 168, 169.
 Tarapin caught, 165.
 Tar River, 180.
 Temperate Climate, 159.
 Tetero, King, 188.
 Tewahominy Creek, 92.
 Tewawhomini Creek, 173.
 Thanksgiving, 185, 186.
 Tike, 162.
 Tilman, George, 224.
 Tobacco, Purchase of, 50; introduced, 2.
 Tortures, 122.
 Trading Path, 179-181.
 Traditions, Indian, 175.
 Turkeys, wild, 81, 94, 97, 103, 106, 113, 119, 135, 146, 161, 166, 178, 177.
 Turkey Buzzards, 50, 94, 146.
 Turpentine, 56.
 Turtle's Eggs, 165.
 Tuscarora Indians, 174.
 Tuskarooda Creek, 92.
USHEREES, 181.
VIRGINIA, how defined, 1.
WALKER, Mr., 191.
 War Parties, how formed, 121.
 Water, Clearness of, 86.
 West Jersey Grant, 12.
 Wharves, Mode of building, 20.
 Weyanoke Creek, 15, 16, 212, 213, 220.
 Whales, 165, 166.
 White, Mr., 28.
 Whitlock, William, 224.
 Wicocon Creek, 16, 213, 215.
 Wicro-quoi Creek, 191.
 Wild-cat, 91, 92.
 Wilkins, William, 37.
 William and Mary's College, 74, 75.
 Wilsons, Thomas, 39, 41, 224.
 Wolves, 58, 98, 99, 177.
 Wool, 41.
YADKIN River, 181, 188.
 Yatapso, 91, 175, 177.
 Yaws, described, 32, 33.

FINIS.



4100

